

PCT

WORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION
International Bureau



INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

<p>(51) International Patent Classification⁶ : C12Q 1/00, 1/68, C07H 21/00</p>	<p>A1</p>	<p>(11) International Publication Number: WO 97/27317 (43) International Publication Date: 31 July 1997 (31.07.97)</p>
<p>(21) International Application Number: PCT/US97/01603 (22) International Filing Date: 22 January 1997 (22.01.97) (30) Priority Data: 60/010,471 23 January 1996 (23.01.96) US Not furnished 9 January 1997 (09.01.97) US (60) Parent Application or Grant (63) Related by Continuation US 60/010,471 (CIP) Filed on 23 January 1996 (23.01.96) (71) Applicant (for all designated States except US): AFFYMETRIX, INC. [US/US]; 3380 Central Expressway, Santa Clara, CA 95051 (US). (72) Inventors; and (75) Inventors/Applicants (for US only): LOCKHART, David, J. [US/US]; Apartment 205, 480 Oak Grove Drive, Santa Clara, CA 95054 (US). CHEE, Mark [AU/US]; 3199 Waverly Street, Palo Alto, CA 94306 (US). GUNDERSON, Kevin [US/US]; 1090 Tanland Drive 103, Palo Alto, CA 94303 (US). LAI, Chaoqiang [CN/US]; 1901 Halford Avenue #230, Santa Clara, CA 95051 (US). WODICKA,</p>		<p>Lisa [US/US]; 3770 Flora Vista #603, Santa Clara, CA 95051 (US). CRONIN, Maureen, T. [US/US]; 771 Anderson Drive, Los Altos, CA 94024 (US). LEE, Danny [US/US]; 5520 Le Franc Drive, San Jose, CA 95118 (US). TRAN, Huu, M. [US/US]; 3697 Cape Cod Court #1, San Jose, CA 95117 (US). MATSUZAKI, Hajime [US/US]; 562 Kendall Avenue #26, Palo Alto, CA 94306 (US). McGALL, Glenn, H. [CA/US]; 750 North Shoreline Boulevard, Mountain View, CA 94041 (US). BARONE, Anthony, D. [US/US]; 2118 Ellen Avenue, San Jose, CA 95125 (US). (74) Agents: HUNTER, Tom et al.; Townsend and Townsend and Crew L.L.P., 8th floor, Two Embarcadero Center, San Francisco, CA 94111 (US). (81) Designated States: AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, CA, CH, CN, CU, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, GB, GE, HU, IL, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, TJ, TM, TR, TT, UA, UG, US, UZ, VN, ARIPO patent (KE, LS, MW, SD, SZ, UG), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG). Published With international search report.</p>
<p>(54) Title: NUCLEIC ACID ANALYSIS TECHNIQUES (57) Abstract The present invention provides a simplified method for identifying differences in nucleic acid abundances (e.g., expression levels) between two or more samples. The methods involve providing an array containing a large number (e.g. greater than 1,000) of arbitrarily selected different oligonucleotide probes where the sequence and location of each different probe is known. Nucleic acid samples (e.g. mRNA) from two or more samples are hybridized to the probe arrays and the pattern of hybridization is detected. Differences in the hybridization patterns between the samples indicates differences in expression of various genes between those samples. This invention also provides a method of end-labeling a nucleic acid. In one embodiment, the method involves providing a nucleic acid, providing a labeled oligonucleotide and then enzymatically ligating the oligonucleotide to the nucleic acid. Thus, for example, where the nucleic acid is an RNA, a labeled oligonucleotide can be ligated using an RNA ligase. In another embodiment, the end labeling can be accomplished by providing a nucleic acid, providing labeled nucleoside triphosphates, and attaching the nucleoside triphosphates to the nucleic acid using a terminal transferase.</p>		

<i>FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY</i>					
Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.					
AM	Armenia	GB	United Kingdom	MW	Malawi
AT	Austria	GE	Georgia	MX	Mexico
AU	Australia	GN	Guinea	NE	Niger
BB	Barbados	GR	Greece	NL	Netherlands
BE	Belgium	HU	Hungary	NO	Norway
BF	Burkina Faso	IE	Ireland	NZ	New Zealand
BG	Bulgaria	IT	Italy	PL	Poland
BJ	Benin	JP	Japan	PT	Portugal
BR	Brazil	KE	Kenya	RO	Romania
BY	Belarus	KG	Kyrgyzstan	RU	Russian Federation
CA	Canada	KP	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	SA	Saudi Arabia
CN	China	LAO	Lao People's Democratic Republic	SD	Sudan
CO	Colombia	LB	Lebanon	SG	Singapore
CZ	Czech Republic	LI	Liechtenstein	SI	Slovenia
DE	Germany	LU	Luxembourg	TJ	Tajikistan
DK	Denmark	LV	Latvia	TT	Trinidad and Tobago
EE	Estonia	MC	Monaco	UA	Ukraine
ES	Spain	MD	Republic of Moldova	UG	Uganda
FI	Finland	MG	Madagascar	US	United States of America
FR	France	ML	Mali	UZ	Uzbekistan
GA	Gabon	MN	Mongolia	VN	Viet Nam
		MR	Mauritania		

<i>FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY</i>					
Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.					
AM	Armenia	GB	United Kingdom	MW	Malawi
AT	Austria	GE	Georgia	MX	Mexico
AU	Australia	GN	Guinea	NE	Niger
BB	Barbados	GR	Greece	NL	Netherlands
BE	Belgium	HU	Hungary	NO	Norway
BF	Burkina Faso	IE	Ireland	NZ	New Zealand
BG	Bulgaria	IT	Italy	PL	Poland
BJ	Benin	JP	Japan	PT	Portugal
BR	Brazil	KE	Kenya	RO	Romania
BY	Belarus	KG	Kyrgyzstan	RU	Russian Federation
CA	Canada	KP	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	SA	Saudi Arabia
CN	China	LAO	Lao People's Democratic Republic	SD	Sudan
CO	Colombia	LB	Lebanon	SG	Singapore
CR	Costa Rica	LI	Liechtenstein	SI	Slovenia
CZ	Czech Republic	LU	Luxembourg	TJ	Tajikistan
DE	Germany	LV	Latvia	TT	Trinidad and Tobago
DK	Denmark	MC	Monaco	UA	Ukraine
EE	Estonia	MD	Republic of Moldova	UG	Uganda
ES	Spain	MG	Madagascar	US	United States of America
FI	Finland	ML	Mali	UZ	Uzbekistan
FR	France	MN	Mongolia	VN	Viet Nam
GA	Gabon	MR	Mauritania		

<i>FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY</i>					
Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.					
AM	Armenia	GB	United Kingdom	MW	Malawi
AT	Austria	GE	Georgia	MX	Mexico
AU	Australia	GN	Guinea	NE	Niger
BB	Barbados	GR	Greece	NL	Netherlands
BE	Belgium	HU	Hungary	NO	Norway
BF	Burkina Faso	IE	Ireland	NZ	New Zealand
BG	Bulgaria	IT	Italy	PL	Poland
BJ	Benin	JP	Japan	PT	Portugal
BR	Brazil	KE	Kenya	RO	Romania
BY	Belarus	KG	Kyrgyzstan	RU	Russian Federation
CA	Canada	KP	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	SF	Togo
CN	China	LK	Sri Lanka	SK	Slovakia
CU	Cuba	LT	Lithuania	SV	El Salvador
CZ	Czech Republic	LU	Luxembourg	SY	Syria
DE	Germany	LV	Estonia	TB	Tanzania
DK	Denmark	MC	Monaco	TJ	Tajikistan
EE	Estonia	MD	Republic of Moldova	TT	Trinidad and Tobago
ES	Spain	MG	Madagascar	UA	Ukraine
FI	Finland	MH	Marshall Islands	UG	Uganda
FR	France	MN	Mongolia	US	United States of America
GA	Ghana	MR	Mauritania	UZ	Uzbekistan
				VN	Viet Nam

NUCLEIC ACID ANALYSIS TECHNIQUES

CROSS REFERENCE TO RELATED APPLICATIONS

This is a continuation-in-part of U.S.S.N. 60/010,471 filed on January 23, 1996 and a continuation-in-part of provisional patent application for "Labeling of Nucleic Acids" naming Lockhart, Cronin, Lee, Tran, Matsuzaki, McGall and Barone as inventors, filed on January 9, 1997, both of which are herein incorporated by reference for all purposes.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

A portion of the disclosure of this patent document contains material which is subject to copyright protection. The copyright owner has no objection to the xerographic reproduction by anyone of the patent document or the patent disclosure in exactly the form it appears in the Patent and Trademark Office patent file or records, but otherwise reserves all copyright rights whatsoever.

Many disease states are characterized by differences in the expression levels of various genes either through changes in the copy number of the genetic DNA or through changes in levels of transcription (*e.g.* through control of initiation, provision of RNA precursors, RNA processing, *etc.*) of particular genes. For example, losses and gains of genetic material play an important role in malignant transformation and progression. These gains and losses are thought to be "driven" by at least two kinds of genes. Oncogenes are positive regulators of tumorigenesis, while tumor suppressor genes are negative regulators of tumorigenesis (Marshall, *Cell*, 64: 313-326 (1991); Weinberg, *Science*, 254: 1138-1146 (1991)). Therefore, one mechanism of activating unregulated growth is to increase the number of genes coding for oncogenes or to increase the expression of these genes (e.g., by increasing the level of transcription of these genes), and another is to lose genetic material or to decrease the level of expression of genes that code for tumor suppressors. This model is supported by the losses and gains of genetic material associated with glioma progression (Mikkelsen *et al.*, *J Cell Biochem* 49: 3-8 (1992)). The regulation of the expression of transcription factors of particular genes

(e.g. oncogenes or tumor suppressors), serve as signposts for the presence and progression of various cancers.

Similarly, control of the cell cycle and cell development, as well as diseases, are characterized by the variations in the transcription levels of particular genes. Thus, for example, a viral infection is often characterized by the elevated expression of genes of the particular virus. For example, outbreaks of *Herpes simplex*, Epstein-Barr virus infections (e.g. infectious mononucleosis), cytomegalovirus, Varicella-zoster virus infections, parvovirus infections, human papillomavirus infections, etc. are all characterized by elevated expression of various genes present in the respective virus. Detection of elevated expression levels of characteristic viral genes provides an effective diagnostic of the disease state. In particular, viruses such as herpes simplex, enter quiescent states for periods of time only to erupt in brief periods of rapid replication. Detection of expression levels of characteristic viral genes allows detection of such active proliferative (and presumably infective) states.

The use of "traditional" hybridization protocols for monitoring or quantifying gene expression is problematic. For example two or more gene products of approximately the same molecular weight will prove difficult or impossible to distinguish in a Northern blot because they are not readily separated by electrophoretic methods. Similarly, as hybridization efficiency and cross-reactivity varies with the particular subsequence (region) of a gene being probed it is difficult to obtain an accurate and reliable measure of gene expression with one, or even a few, probes to the target gene.

The development of VLSIPSTTM technology provided methods for synthesizing arrays of many different oligonucleotide probes that occupy a very small surface area. See U.S. Patent No. 5,143,854 and PCT patent publication No. WO 90/15070. U.S. Patent application Serial No. 082,937, filed June 25, 1993, describes methods for making arrays of oligonucleotide probes that can be used to provide the

previous methods of measuring nucleic acid abundance differences or changes in the expression of various genes (e.g., differential display, SAGE, cDNA sequencing, clone spotting, etc.) require assumptions about or prior knowledge regarding

the target sequences in order to design appropriate sequence-specific probes. Other methods, such as subtractive hybridization, do not require prior sequence knowledge, but also do not directly provide sequence information regarding differentially expressed nucleic acids.

5

Summary of the Invention

The present invention, in one embodiment, provides methods of monitoring the expression of a multiplicity of preselected genes (referred to herein as "expression monitoring"). In another embodiment this invention provides a way of identifying differences in the compositions of two or more nucleic acid (*e.g.*, RNA or DNA) samples. Where the nucleic acid abundances reflect expression levels in biological samples from which the samples are derived, the invention provides a method for identifying differences in expression profiles between two or more samples. These "generic difference screening methods" are rapid, simple to apply, require no *a priori* assumptions regarding the particular sequences whose expression may differ between the two samples, and provide direct sequence information regarding the nucleic acids whose abundances differ between the samples.

In one embodiment, this invention provides a method of identifying differences in nucleic acid levels between two or more nucleic acid samples. The method involves the steps of: (a) providing one or more oligonucleotide arrays said arrays comprising probe oligonucleotides attached to a surface; (b) hybridizing said nucleic acid samples to said one or more arrays to form hybrid duplexes between nucleic acids in said nucleic acid samples and probe oligonucleotides in said one or more arrays that are complementary to said nucleic acids or subsequences thereof; (c) contacting said one or more arrays with a nucleic acid ligase; and (d) determining differences in hybridization between said nucleic acid samples wherein said differences in hybridization indicate differences in said nucleic acid levels.

Another embodiment of the invention for identifying differences in nucleic acid levels between two or more nucleic acid samples involves the steps of: (a) providing one or more oligonucleotide arrays comprising probe oligonucleotides wherein said probe oligonucleotides comprise a constant region and a variable region, (b) hybridizing said

30

nucleic acid samples to said one or more arrays to form hybrid duplexes between nucleic acids in said nucleic acid samples and said variable regions that are complementary to said nucleic acids or subsequences thereof; and (c) determining differences in hybridization between said nucleic acid samples wherein said differences in hybridization indicate differences in said nucleic acid levels.

In yet another embodiment, the method of identifying differences in nucleic acid levels between two or more nucleic acid samples involves the steps of: (a) providing one or more high density oligonucleotide arrays; (b) hybridizing said nucleic acid samples to said one or more arrays to form hybrid duplexes between nucleic acids in said nucleic acid samples and probe oligonucleotides in said one or more arrays that are complementary to said nucleic acids or subsequences thereof; and (c) determining the differences in hybridization between said nucleic acid samples wherein said differences in hybridization indicate differences in said nucleic acid levels.

In still yet another embodiment, the method of identifying differences in nucleic acid levels between two or more nucleic acid samples involves the steps of: (a) providing one or more oligonucleotide arrays each comprising probe oligonucleotides wherein said probe oligonucleotides are not chosen to hybridize to nucleic acids derived from particular preselected genes or mRNAs; (b) hybridizing said nucleic acid samples to said one or more arrays to form hybrid duplexes between nucleic acids in said nucleic acid samples and probe oligonucleotides in said one or more arrays that are complementary to said nucleic acids or subsequences thereof; and (d) determining differences in hybridization between said nucleic acid samples wherein said differences in hybridization indicate differences in said nucleic acid levels.

In another embodiment, the methods of identifying differences in nucleic acid levels between two or more nucleic acid samples involves the steps of: (a) providing one or more oligonucleotide arrays each comprising probe oligonucleotides wherein said

random selection, a nucleotide composition biased selection, and all possible oligonucleotides of a preselected length; (b) hybridizing said nucleic acid samples to said one or more arrays to form hybrid duplexes between nucleic acids in said nucleic acid

samples and probe oligonucleotides in said one or more arrays that are complementary to said nucleic acids or subsequences thereof; and (c) determining differences in hybridization between said nucleic acid samples wherein said differences in hybridization indicate differences in said nucleic acid levels.

5 In another embodiment, the methods of identifying differences in nucleic acid levels between two or more nucleic acid samples involve the steps of: (a) providing one or more oligonucleotide arrays each comprising probe oligonucleotides wherein said probe oligonucleotides comprise a nucleotide sequence or subsequences selected according to a process selected from the group consisting of a random selection, a
10 haphazard selection, a nucleotide composition biased selection, and all possible oligonucleotides of a preselected length; (b) providing software describing the location and sequence of probe oligonucleotides on said array; (c) hybridizing said nucleic acid samples to said one or more arrays to form hybrid duplexes between nucleic acids in said nucleic acid samples and probe oligonucleotides in said one or more arrays that are complementary
15 to said nucleic acids or subsequences thereof; and (d) operating said software such that said hybridizing indicates differences in said nucleic acid levels.

This invention also provides methods of simultaneously monitoring the expression of a multiplicity of genes. In one embodiment these methods involve (a) providing a pool of target nucleic acids comprising RNA transcripts of one or more of said
20 genes, or nucleic acids derived from said RNA transcripts; (b) hybridizing said pool of nucleic acids to an oligonucleotide array comprising probe oligonucleotides immobilized on a surface; (c) contacting said oligonucleotide array with a ligase; and (d) quantifying the hybridization of said nucleic acids to said array wherein said quantifying provides a measure of the levels of transcription of said genes.

25 Still yet another method of identifying differences in nucleic acid levels between two or more nucleic acid samples involves the steps of: (a) providing one or more arrays of oligonucleotides each array comprising pairs of probes. The probes of each pair are complementary to each other and to a common target nucleotide sequence. (b) providing one or more nucleic acid samples, (c) hybridizing said nucleic acid samples to said one or more arrays to form
30 hybrid duplexes between nucleic acids in said nucleic acid samples and probe oligonucleotides in said one or more arrays that are complementary to said nucleic acids or

subsequences thereof; (c) determining the differences in hybridization between said nucleic acid samples wherein said differences in hybridization indicate differences in said nucleic acid levels.

Another method of simultaneously monitoring the expression of a
5 multiplicity of genes, involves the steps of: (a) providing one or more oligonucleotide arrays comprising probe oligonucleotides wherein said probe oligonucleotides comprise a constant region and a variable region; (b) providing a pool of target nucleic acids comprising RNA transcripts of one or more of said genes, or nucleic acids derived from said RNA transcripts; (c) hybridizing said pool of nucleic acids to an array of
10 oligonucleotide probes immobilized on a surface; and (d) quantifying the hybridization of said nucleic acids to said array wherein said quantifying provides a measure of the levels of transcription of said genes.

This invention additionally provides methods of making a nucleic acid array for identifying differences in nucleic acid levels between two or more nucleic acid
15 samples. In one embodiment the method involves the steps of: (a) providing an oligonucleotide array comprising probe oligonucleotides wherein said probe oligonucleotides comprise a constant region and a variable region; (b) hybridizing one or more of said nucleic acid samples to said arrays to form hybrid duplexes of said variable region and nucleic acids in said nucleic acid samples comprising subsequences
20 complementary to said variable region; (c) attaching the sample nucleic acids comprising said hybrid duplexes to said array of probe oligonucleotides; and (d) removing unattached nucleic acids to provide a high density oligonucleotide array bearing sample nucleic acids attached to said array.

In another embodiment the method of making a nucleic acid array for
25 identifying differences in nucleic acid levels between two or more nucleic acid samples, involves the steps of: (a) providing a high density array; (b) contacting said array one or more of said two or more nucleic acid samples; (c) attaching the sample nucleic acids comprising said hybrid duplexes to said array of probe oligonucleotides; and (d) removing unattached nucleic acids to provide a high
30 density oligonucleotide array bearing sample nucleic acids attached to said array.

This invention additionally provides kits for practice of the methods described herein. One kit comprises a container containing one or more oligonucleotide arrays said arrays comprising probe oligonucleotides attached to a surface; and a container containing a ligase. Another kit comprises a container containing one or more
5 oligonucleotide arrays said arrays comprising probe oligonucleotides wherein said probe oligonucleotides comprise a constant region and a variable region. This kit optionally includes a constant oligonucleotide complementary to said constant region or a subsequence thereof.

Preferred high density oligonucleotide arrays of this invention comprise
10 more than 100 different probe oligonucleotides wherein: each different probe oligonucleotide is localized in a predetermined region of the array; each different probe oligonucleotide is attached to a surface through a terminal covalent bond; and the density of said probe different oligonucleotides is greater than about 60 different oligonucleotides per 1 cm². The high density arrays can be used in all of the array-based methods discussed
15 herein. High density arrays used for expression monitoring will typically include oligonucleotide probes selected to be complementary to a nucleic acid derived from one or more preselected genes. In contrast, generic difference screening arrays may contain probe oligonucleotides selected randomly, haphazardly, arbitrarily, or including sequences or subsequences comprising all possible nucleic acid sequences of a particular (preselected)
20 length.

In a preferred embodiment, pools of oligonucleotides or oligonucleotide subsequences comprising all possible nucleic acids of a particular length are selected from the group consisting of all possible 6 mers, all possible 7 mers, all possible 8 mers, all possible 9 mers, all possible 10 mers, all possible 11 mers, and all possible 12 mers

25 This invention also provides methods of labeling a nucleic acid. In one embodiment, this method involves the steps of: (a) providing a nucleic acid; (b) amplifying said nucleic acid to form amplicons; (c) fragmenting said amplicons

26 (c) fragmenting said amplicons

30 In another embodiment, the methods involve the steps of: (a) providing a nucleic acid; (b) transcribing said nucleic acid to form a transcribed nucleic acid; (c)

fragmenting said transcribed nucleic acid to form fragments of said transcribed nucleic acid; and (d) coupling a labeled moiety to at least one of said fragments.

In yet another embodiment, the methods involve the steps of: (a) providing at least one nucleic acid coupled to a support; (b) providing a labeled moiety capable of
5 being coupled with a terminal transferase to said nucleic acid; (c) providing said terminal transferase; and (d) coupling said labeled moiety to said nucleic acid using said terminal transferase.

In still another embodiment, the methods involve the steps of: (a) providing at least two nucleic acids coupled to a support; (b) increasing the number of monomer units
10 of said nucleic acids to form a common nucleic acid tail on said at least two nucleic acids; (c) providing a labeled moiety capable of recognizing said common nucleic acid tails; and (d) contacting said common nucleic acid tails and said labeled moiety.

In still yet another embodiment, the methods involve the steps of: (a) providing at least one nucleic acid coupled to a support; (b) providing a labeled moiety
15 capable of being coupled with a ligase to said nucleic acid; (c) providing said ligase; and (d) coupling said labeled moiety to said nucleic acid using said ligase.

This invention also provides compounds of the formulas described herein.

Definitions.

20 An array of oligonucleotides as used herein refers to a multiplicity of different (sequence) oligonucleotides attached (preferably through a single terminal covalent bond) to one or more solid supports where, when there is a multiplicity of supports, each support bears a multiplicity of oligonucleotides. The term "array" can refer to the entire collection of oligonucleotides on the support(s) or to a subset thereof. The
25 term "same array" when used to refer to two or more arrays is used to mean arrays that have substantially the same oligonucleotide species thereon in substantially the same

that even where two arrays are designed and synthesized to be identical there are variations
30 in the abundance, composition, and distribution of oligonucleotide probes. These

variations are preferably insubstantial and/or compensated for by the use of controls as described herein.

The phrase "massively parallel screening" refers to the simultaneous screening of at least about 100, preferably about 1000, more preferably about 10,000 and most preferably about 1,000,000 different nucleic acid hybridizations.

The terms "nucleic acid" or "nucleic acid molecule" refer to a deoxyribonucleotide or ribonucleotide polymer in either single- or double-stranded form, and unless otherwise limited, would encompass known analogs of natural nucleotides that can function in a similar manner as naturally occurring nucleotides.

An oligonucleotide is a single-stranded nucleic acid ranging in length from 2 to about 1000 nucleotides, more typically from 2 to about 500 nucleotides in length.

As used herein a "probe" is defined as an oligonucleotide capable of binding to a target nucleic acid of complementary sequence through one or more types of chemical bonds, usually through complementary base pairing, usually through hydrogen bond formation. As used herein, an oligonucleotide probe may include natural (*i.e.* A, G, C, or T) or modified bases (7-deazaguanosine, inosine, *etc.*). In addition, the bases in oligonucleotide probe may be joined by a linkage other than a phosphodiester bond, so long as it does not interfere with hybridization. Thus, oligonucleotide probes may be peptide nucleic acids in which the constituent bases are joined by peptide bonds rather than phosphodiester linkages.

The term "target nucleic acid" refers to a nucleic acid (often derived from a biological sample and hence referred to also as a sample nucleic acid), to which the oligonucleotide probe specifically hybridizes. It is recognized that the target nucleic acids can be derived from essentially any source of nucleic acids (*e.g.*, including, but not limited to chemical syntheses, amplification reactions, forensic samples, *etc.*) It is either the presence or absence of one or more target nucleic acids that is to be detected, or the amount of one or more target nucleic acids that is to be quantified. The target nucleic acid

may be a full-length nucleic acid or a subsequence thereof. The term "target nucleic acid" may refer to the specific subsequence of a larger nucleic acid to which the probe specifically hybridizes, or to the overall sequence (*e.g.*

gene or mRNA) whose abundance (concentration) and/or expression level it is desired to detect. The difference in usage will be apparent from context.

A "ligatable oligonucleotide" or "ligatable probe" or "ligatable oligonucleotide probe" refers to an oligonucleotide that is capable of being ligated to another oligonucleotide by the use of a ligase (*e.g.*, T4 DNA ligase). The ligatable oligonucleotide is preferably a deoxyribonucleotide. The nucleotides comprising the ligatable oligonucleotide are preferably the "standard" nucleotides; A, G, C, and T or U. However derivatized, modified, or alternative nucleotides (*e.g.*, inosine) can be present as long as their presence does not interfere with the ligation reaction. The ligatable probe may be labeled or otherwise modified as long as the label does not interfere with the ligation reaction. Similarly the internucleotide linkages can be modified as long as the modification does not interfere with ligation. Thus, in some instances, the ligatable oligonucleotide can be a peptide nucleic acid.

"Subsequence" refers to a sequence of nucleic acids that comprises a part of a longer sequence of nucleic acids.

A "wobble" refers to a degeneracy at a particular position in an oligonucleotide. A fully degenerate or "4 way" wobble refers to a collection of nucleic acids (*e.g.*, oligonucleotide probes having A, G, C, or T for DNA or A, G, C, or U for RNA at the wobble position.) A wobble may be approximated by the replacement of the nucleotide with inosine which will base pair with A, G, C, or T or U. Typically oligonucleotides containing a fully degenerate wobble produced during chemical synthesis of an oligonucleotide is prepared by using a mixture of four different nucleotide monomers at the particular coupling step in which the wobble is to be introduced.

The term "cross-linking" when used in reference to cross-linking nucleic acids refers to attaching nucleic acids such that they are not separated under typical conditions that are used to denature complementary nucleic acid sequences. Crosslinking preferably involves the formation of covalent linkages between nucleic acids.

A phrase "coupled to a support" means bound directly or indirectly thereto including attachment by covalent binding, hydrogen bonding, ionic interaction, hydrophobic interaction, or otherwise.

"Amplicons" are the products of the amplification of nucleic acids by PCR or otherwise.

"Transcribing a nucleic acid" means the formation of a ribonucleic acid from a deoxyribonucleic acid and the converse (the formation of a deoxyribonucleic acid from a ribonucleic acid). A nucleic acid can be transcribed by DNA-dependent RNA
5 polymerase, reverse transcriptase, or otherwise.

A labeled moiety means a moiety capable of being detected by the various methods discussed herein or known in the art.

The term "complexity" is used here according to standard meaning of this
10 term as established by Britten *et al. Methods of Enzymol.* 29:363 (1974). See, also Cantor and Schimmel *Biophysical Chemistry: Part III* at 1228-1230 for further explanation of nucleic acid complexity.

"Bind(s) substantially" refers to complementary hybridization between a probe nucleic acid and a target nucleic acid and embraces minor mismatches that can be
15 accommodated by reducing the stringency of the hybridization media to achieve the desired detection of the target polynucleotide sequence.

The phrase "hybridizing specifically to", refers to the binding, duplexing, or hybridizing of a molecule preferentially to a particular nucleotide sequence under stringent conditions when that sequence is present in a complex mixture (*e.g.*, total cellular) DNA or
20 RNA. The term "stringent conditions" refers to conditions under which a probe will hybridize preferentially to its target subsequence, and to a lesser extent to, or not at all to, other sequences. Stringent conditions are sequence-dependent and will be different in different circumstances. Longer sequences hybridize specifically at higher temperatures. Generally, stringent conditions are selected to be about 5°C lower than the thermal melting
25 point (T_m) for the specific sequence at a defined ionic strength and pH. The T_m is the temperature (under defined ionic strength, pH, and nucleic acid concentration) at which 50% of the probes complementary to the target sequence hybridize to the target.

Stringent hybridization conditions may be defined in a number of ways. Generally, stringent conditions will be those in which
30 the salt concentration is at least about 0.01 to 1.0 M Na ion concentration (or other salts) at pH 7.0 to 8.3 and the temperature is at least about 30°C for short probes (*e.g.*, 10 to 50

nucleotides). Stringent conditions may also be achieved with the addition of destabilizing agents such as formamide.

The term "perfect match probe" refers to a probe that has a sequence that is perfectly complementary to a particular target sequence. The test probe is typically perfectly complementary to a portion (subsequence) of the target sequence. The perfect match (PM) probe can be a "test probe", a "normalization control" probe, an expression level control probe and the like. A perfect match control or perfect match probe is, however, distinguished from a "mismatch control" or "mismatch probe." In the case of expression monitoring arrays, perfect match probes are typically preselected (designed) to be complementary to particular sequences or subsequences of target nucleic acids (*e.g.*, particular genes). In contrast, in generic difference screening arrays, the particular target sequences are typically unknown. In the latter case, perfect match probes cannot be preselected. The term perfect match probe in this context is to distinguish that probe from a corresponding "mismatch control" that differs from the perfect match in one or more particular preselected nucleotides as described below.

The term "mismatch control" or "mismatch probe", in expression monitoring arrays, refers to probes whose sequence is deliberately selected not to be perfectly complementary to a particular target sequence. For each mismatch (MM) control in a high-density array there preferably exists a corresponding perfect match (PM) probe that is perfectly complementary to the same particular target sequence. In "generic" (*e.g.*, random, arbitrary, haphazard, *etc.*) arrays, since the target nucleic acid(s) are unknown perfect match and mismatch probes cannot be *a priori* determined, designed, or selected. In this instance, the probes are preferably provided as pairs where each pair of probes differ in one or more preselected nucleotides. Thus, while it is not known *a priori* which of the probes in the pair is the perfect match, it is known that when one probe specifically hybridizes to a particular target sequence, the other probe of the pair will act as a mismatch control for that target sequence. It will be appreciated that the perfect match and mismatch probes that differ from each other in particular preselected nucleotides. While the mismatch(s) may be located anywhere in the mismatch probe, terminal mismatches are less desirable as a terminal mismatch is less likely to prevent hybridization

of the target sequence. In a particularly preferred embodiment, the mismatch is located at or near the center of the probe such that the mismatch is most likely to destabilize the duplex with the target sequence under the test hybridization conditions. In a particularly preferred embodiment, perfect matches differ from mismatch controls in a single centrally-located nucleotide.

The terms "background" or "background signal intensity" refer to hybridization signals resulting from non-specific binding, or other interactions, between the labeled target nucleic acids and components of the oligonucleotide array (*e.g.*, the oligonucleotide probes, control probes, the array substrate, *etc.*). Background signals may also be produced by intrinsic fluorescence of the array components themselves. A single background signal can be calculated for the entire array, or a different background signal may be calculated for each region of the array. In a preferred embodiment, background is calculated as the average hybridization signal intensity for the lowest 1% to 10% of the probes in the array, or region of the array. In expression monitoring arrays (*i.e.*, where probes are preselected to hybridize to specific nucleic acids (genes)), a different background signal may be calculated for each target nucleic acid. Where a different background signal is calculated for each target gene, the background signal is calculated for the lowest 1% to 10% of the probes for each gene. Of course, one of skill in the art will appreciate that where the probes to a particular gene hybridize well and thus appear to be specifically binding to a target sequence, they should not be used in a background signal calculation. Alternatively, background may be calculated as the average hybridization signal intensity produced by hybridization to probes that are not complementary to any sequence found in the sample (*e.g.* probes directed to nucleic acids of the opposite sense or to genes not found in the sample such as bacterial genes where the sample is of mammalian origin). Background can also be calculated as the average signal intensity produced by regions of the array that lack any probes at all.

The term "quantifying" when used in the context of quantifying the amount of target nucleic acid in a sample may be accomplished by inclusion of known concentration(s) of one or more target nucleic acids (*e.g.* control nucleic acids such as *BioB* or with known amounts the target nucleic acids themselves) and referencing the

hybridization intensity of unknowns with the known target nucleic acids (*e.g.* through generation of a standard curve). Alternatively, relative quantification can be accomplished by comparison of hybridization signals between two or more genes, or between two or more treatments to quantify the changes in hybridization intensity and, by implication, transcription level.

The "percentage of sequence identity" or "sequence identity" is determined by comparing two optimally aligned sequences or subsequences over a comparison window or span, wherein the portion of the polynucleotide sequence in the comparison window may optionally comprise additions or deletions (*i.e.*, gaps) as compared to the reference sequence (which does not comprise additions or deletions) for optimal alignment of the two sequences. The percentage is calculated by determining the number of positions at which the identical subunit (*e.g.* nucleic acid base or amino acid residue) occurs in both sequences to yield the number of matched positions, dividing the number of matched positions by the total number of positions in the window of comparison and multiplying the result by 100 to yield the percentage of sequence identity. Percentage sequence identity when calculated using the programs GAP or BESTFIT (see below) is calculated using default gap weights.

Methods of alignment of sequences for comparison are well known in the art. Optimal alignment of sequences for comparison may be conducted by the local homology algorithm of Smith and Waterman, *Adv. Appl. Math.* 2: 482 (1981), by the homology alignment algorithm of Needleman and Wunsch *J. Mol. Biol.* 48: 443 (1970), by the search for similarity method of Pearson and Lipman, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 85: 2444 (1988), by computerized implementations of these algorithms (including, but not limited to CLUSTAL in the PC/Gene program by Intelligenetics, Mountain View, California, GAP, BESTFIT, FASTA, and TFASTA in the Wisconsin Genetics Software Package, Genetics Computer Group (GCG), 575 Science Dr., Madison, Wisconsin, USA).

(BIOS) 1.1.1 (1989)

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

Fig. 1 shows a schematic of expression monitoring using oligonucleotide arrays. Extracted poly (A)⁺ RNA is converted to cDNA, which is then transcribed in the presence of labeled ribonucleotide triphosphates. L is either biotin or a dye such as fluorescein. RNA is fragmented with heat in the presence of magnesium ions. Hybridizations are carried out in a flow cell that contains the two-dimensional DNA probe arrays. Following a brief washing step to remove unhybridized RNA, the arrays are scanned using a scanning confocal microscope. Alternatives in which cellular mRNA is directly labeled without a cDNA intermediate are described in the Examples. Image analysis software converts the scanned array images into text files in which the observed intensities at specific physical locations are associated with particular probe sequences.

Fig. 2A shows a fluorescent image of a high density array containing over 16,000 different oligonucleotide probes. The image was obtained following hybridization (15 hours at 40°C) of biotin-labeled randomly fragmented sense RNA transcribed from the murine B cell (T10) cDNA library, and spiked at the level of 1:3,000 (50 pM equivalent to about 100 copies per cell) with 13 specific RNA targets. The brightness at any location is indicative of the amount of labeled RNA hybridized to the particular oligonucleotide probe. Fig. 2B shows a small portion of the array (the boxed region of Fig. 2A) containing probes for IL-2 and IL-3 RNAs. For comparison, Fig. 2C shows the same region of the array following hybridization with an unspiked T10 RNA samples (T10 cells do not express IL-2 and IL-3). The variation in the signal intensity was highly reproducible and reflected the sequence dependence of the hybridization efficiencies. The central cross and the four corners of the array contain a control sequence that is complementary to a biotin-labeled oligonucleotide that was added to the hybridization solution at a constant concentration (50 pM). The sharpness of the images near the boundaries of the features was limited by the resolution of the reading device (11.25 μ m) and not by the spatial resolution of the array synthesis. The pixels in the border regions of each feature are blurred. This provides a log-log plot of the hybridization intensity (coverage of the PM-MM intensity differences for each gene) versus concentration for 11 different RNA targets. The hybridization signals were quantitatively related to target concentration. The

experiments were performed as described in the Examples herein and in Fig. 2. The ten 10 cytokine RNAs (plus *bioB*) were spiked into labeled T10 RNA at levels ranging from 1:300,000 to 1:3,000. The signals continued to increase with increased concentration up to frequencies of 1:300, but the response became sublinear at the high levels due to saturation of the probe sites. The linear range can be extended to higher concentrations by using
5 shorter hybridization times. RNAs from genes expressed in T10 cells (IL-10, β -actin and GAPDH) were also detected at levels consistent with results obtained by probing cDNA libraries.

Fig. 4 shows cytokine mRNA levels in the murine 2D6 T helper cell line at
10 different times following stimulation with PMA and a calcium ionophore. Poly (A)⁺ RNA was extracted at 0, 2, 6, and 24 hours following stimulation and converted to double stranded cDNA containing an RNA polymerase promoter. The cDNA pool was then transcribed in the presence of biotin labeled ribonucleotide triphosphates, fragmented, and hybridized to the oligonucleotide probe arrays for 2 and 22 hours. The fluorescence
15 intensities were converted to RNA frequencies by comparison with the signals obtained for a bacterial RNA (biotin synthetase) spiked into the samples at known amounts prior to hybridization. A signal of 50,000 corresponds to a frequency of approximately 1:100,000 to a frequency of 1:5,000, and a signal of 100 to a frequency of 1:50,000. RNAs for IL-2, IL-4, IL-6, and IL-12p40 were not detected above the level of approximately 1:200,000 in
20 these experiments. The error bars reflect the estimated uncertainty (25 percent) in the level for a given RNA relative to the level for the same RNA at a different time point. The relative uncertainty estimate was based on the results of repeated spiking experiments, and on repeated measurements of IL-10, β -actin and GAPDH RNAs in preparations from both T10 and 2D6 cells (unstimulated). The uncertainty in the absolute frequencies includes
25 message-to-message differences in the hybridization efficiency as well as differences in the mRNA isolation, cDNA synthesis, and RNA synthesis and labeling steps. The uncertainty

different oligonucleotide probes for 118 genes. The image was obtained following
30 overnight hybridization of a labeled murine B cell RNA sample. Each square synthesis region is 50 x 50 μ m and contains 10⁷ to 10⁸ copies of a specific oligonucleotide. The

array was scanned at a resolution of 7.5 μm in approximately 15 minutes. The bright rows indicate RNAs present at high levels. Lower level RNAs were unambiguously detected based on quantitative evaluation of the hybridization patterns. A total of 21 murine RNAs were detected at levels ranging from approximately 1:300,000 to 1:100. The cross in the center, the checkerboard in the corners, and the MUR-1 region at the top contain probes complementary to a labeled control oligonucleotide that was added to all samples.

Fig. 6 shows an example of a computer system used to execute the software of an embodiment of the present invention.

Fig. 7 shows a system block diagram of a typical computer system used to execute the software of an embodiment of the present invention.

Fig. 8 shows the high level flow of a process of monitoring the expression of a gene by comparing hybridization intensities of pairs of perfect match and mismatch probes.

Fig. 9 shows the flow of a process of determining if a gene is expressed utilizing a decision matrix.

Figs. 10A and 10B show the flow of a process of determining the expression of a gene by comparing baseline scan data and experimental scan data.

Fig. 11 shows the flow of a process of increasing the number of probes for monitoring the expression of genes after the number of probes has been reduced or pruned.

Figs. 12a and 12b illustrate the probe oligonucleotide/ligation reaction system. Fig. 12 generally illustrates the various components of the probe oligonucleotide/ligation reaction system. Fig. 12b illustrates discrimination of non-perfectly complementary target:oligonucleotide hybrids using the probe oligonucleotide/ligation reaction system.

Figs. 13a, 13b, 13c, and 13d illustrate the various components of ligation/hybridization reactions and illustrates various ligation strategies. Fig. 13a illustrates various components of the ligation/hybridization reaction system. Fig. 13b illustrates discrimination of non-perfectly complementary target:oligonucleotide hybrids using the probe oligonucleotide/ligation reaction system. Fig. 13c illustrates a ligation strategy that discriminates mismatches at the terminus of the probe oligonucleotide. Fig. 13d illustrates a ligation strategy that discriminates mismatches at the terminus of the sample oligonucleotide. Fig.

13d illustrates a method for improving the discrimination at both the probe terminus and the sample terminus.

Figs. 14a, 14b, 14c, and 14d illustrates a ligation discrimination used in conjunction with a restriction digest of the sample nucleic acid. Fig. 14a shows the recognition site and cleavage pattern of *SacI* (a 6 cutter) and *Hsp92 II* (4 cutter). Fig. 14b illustrates the effect of *SacI* cleavage on a (target) nucleic acid sample. Fig. 14c illustrates a 6 Mb genome (*i.e.*, *E. coli*) digested with *SacI* and *SphI* generating ~ 1kb genomic fragments with a 5' C. Fig. 14d illustrates the hybridization/ligation of these fragments to a generic difference screening chip and their subsequent use as probes to hybridize to the appropriate nucleic acid (Format I) or the fragments are labeled, hybridized/ligated to the oligonucleotide array and directly analyzed (Format II).

Figs. 15a, 15b, 15c, 15d, and 15e illustrate the analysis of differential display DNA fragments on a generic difference screening array. Fig. 15a shows first strand cDNA synthesis by reverse transcription of poly(a) mRNA using an anchored poly(T) primer. Fig. 15b illustrates upstream primers for PCR reaction containing an engineered restriction site and degenerate bases (N=A,G,C,T) at the 3' end. Fig. 15c shows randomly primed PCR of first strand cDNA. Fig. 15d shows restriction digest of PCR products, and Fig. 15e shows sorting of PCR products on a generic ligation array by their 5' end.

Figs. 16a, 16b, and 16c illustrate the differences between replicate 1 and replicate 2 for sample 1 and sample 2 nucleic acids. Fig. 16a shows the differences between replicate 1 and replicate 2 for sample 1, the normal cell line. Fig. 16b shows the differences between replicate 1 and replicate 2 for sample 2, the tumor cell line). Figure 16c plots the differences between sample 1 and 2 averaged over the two replicates.

Figs. 17a, 17b, and 17c illustrates the data of Figs 16A, 16b, and 16c filtered. Figure 17a shows the relative change in hybridization intensities of replicate 1 and 2 of sample 1 for the difference of each oligonucleotide pair. Fig. 17b shows the ratio of replicate 1 and 2 of sample 2 for the difference of each oligonucleotide pair.

The ratio is calculated as in Fig. 17A, but based on the absolute value of the difference between replicate 1 and replicate 2 for the difference of each oligonucleotide pair and sample 2 averaged over two replicates for the difference of each oligonucleotide pair. The ratio is calculated as in Fig. 17A, but based on the absolute value of

$[(X_{21k1}+X_{22k2})/2]/[(X_{11k1}+X_{12k2})/2]$ and $[(X_{11k1}+X_{12k2})/2]/[(X_{21k1}+X_{22k2})/2]$ after normalization as in Fig. 16c.

Fig. 18 illustrates post-fragmentation labeling using a CIAP treatment.

Fig. 19 provides a schematic illustration of pos-hybridization end labeling
5 on a high density oligonucleotide array.

Fig. 20 provides a schematic illustration end-labeling utilizing pre-reaction of a high density array prior to hybridization and end labeling.

Fig. 21 illustrates the results of a measure of post-hybridization TdTase end labeling call accuracy.

10 Fig. 22 illustrates oligo dT labeling on a high density oligonucleotide array.

Fig. 23 illustrates various labeling reagents suitable for use in the methods disclosed herein. Fig. 23a shows various labeling reagents. Fig. 23b shows still other labeling reagents. Fig. 23c shows non-ribose or non-2'-deoxyribose-containing labels. Fig. 23d shows sugar-modified nucleotide analogue labels 23d.

15 Fig. 24. illustrates resequencing of a target DNA molecule with a set of generic n-mer tiling probes.

Fig. 25 illustrates four tiling arrays present on a 4-mer generic array.

Fig. 26 illustrates base calling at the 8th position in the target.

Fig. 27 illustrates a base vote table.

20 Fig. 28 illustrates the effect of applying correctness score transform to HIV data.

Fig. 29 illustrates mutation detection by intensity comparisons.

Fig. 30 illustrates bubble formation detection of mutation in the HIV genome.

25 Fig. 31 illustrates induced difference nearest neighbor probe scoring.

Fig. 32 illustrates mutations found in an HIV PCR target (B) using a generic ligation GeneChip™ and induced difference analysis

FIG. 32 illustrates a HIV target

DETAILED DESCRIPTION

I. Expression Monitoring and Generic Difference Screening.

This invention provides methods of expression monitoring and generic difference screening. The term expression monitoring is used to refer to the determination of levels of expression of particular, typically preselected, genes. In a preferred embodiment, the expression monitoring methods of this invention utilize high density arrays of oligonucleotides selected to be complementary to predetermined subsequences of the gene or genes whose expression levels are to be detected. Nucleic acid samples are hybridized to the arrays and the resulting hybridization signal provides an indication of the level of expression of each gene of interest. Because of the high degree of probe redundancy (typically there are multiple probes per gene) the expression monitoring methods provide an essentially accurate absolute measurement and do not require comparison to a reference nucleic acid.

In another embodiment, this invention provides generic difference screening methods, that identify differences in the abundance (concentration) of particular nucleic acids in two or more nucleic acid samples. The generic difference screening methods involve hybridizing two or more nucleic acid samples to the same array high density oligonucleotide array, or to different high density oligonucleotide arrays having the same oligonucleotide probe composition, and optionally the same oligonucleotide spatial distribution. The resulting hybridizations are then compared allowing determination which nucleic acids differ in abundance (concentration) between the two or more samples.

Where the concentrations of the nucleic acids comprising the samples reflects transcription levels genes in a sample from which the nucleic acids are derived, the generic difference screening methods permit identification of differences in transcription (and by implication in expression) of the nucleic acids comprising the two or more samples. The differentially (*e.g.*, over- or under) expressed nucleic acids thus identified

The generic difference screening methods are advantageous in that, in contrast to the expression monitoring methods, they require no *a priori* assumptions about the probe oligonucleotide composition of the array. To the contrary, the sequences of the

probe oligonucleotides may be random, haphazard, or any arbitrary subset of oligonucleotide probes. Where the oligonucleotide probes are short enough (*e.g.*, less than or equal to a 12 mer) the array may contain every possible nucleic acid of that length. Despite the fact that the generic difference screening arrays might be arbitrary or random, since the sequence of each probe in the array is known the generic difference screening methods still provide direct sequence information regarding the differentially expressed nucleic acids in the samples.

The expression monitoring and generic difference screening methods of this invention involve providing an array containing a large number (*e.g.* greater than 1,000) of arbitrarily selected different oligonucleotide probes (probe oligonucleotides) where the sequence and location in the array of each different probe is known. Nucleic acid samples (*e.g.* mRNA) are hybridized to the probe arrays and the pattern of hybridization is detected.

It is demonstrated herein and in copending applications U. S Patent Serial No. 08/529,115 filed on September 15, 1995 and PCT/US96/14839 that hybridization with high density oligonucleotide probe arrays provides an effective means of detecting and/or quantifying the expression of particular nucleic acids in complex nucleic acid populations. The expression monitoring and difference screening methods of this invention may be used in a wide variety of circumstances including detection of disease, identification of differential gene expression between two samples (*e.g.*, a pathological as compared to a healthy sample), screening for compositions that upregulate or downregulate the expression of particular genes, and so forth.

In one preferred embodiment, the methods of this invention are used to monitor the expression (transcription) levels of nucleic acids whose expression is altered in a disease state. For example, a cancer may be characterized by the overexpression of a particular marker such as the HER2 (c-erbB-2/neu) proto-oncogene in the case of breast cancer. Similarly, overexpression of receptor tyrosine kinases (RTKs) is associated with the etiology of a number of tumors including carcinomas of the breast, liver, bladder, and colon. Conversely, a cancer (e.g., colorectal, lung and breast) may be characterized by the mutation of or underexpression of a tumor suppressor

gene such as P53 (*see, e.g., Tominaga et al. Critical Rev. in Oncogenesis, 3: 257-282 (1992)*)).

Where the particular genes of interest are known, the high density arrays will preferably contain probe oligonucleotides selected to be complementary to the sequences or subsequences of those genes of interest. High probe redundancy for each gene of interest can be achieved and absolute expression levels of each gene can be determined.

Conversely, where it is unknown which genes differ in expression between the healthy and disease state the generic difference screening methods of this invention are particularly appropriate. Hybridization of the healthy and pathological nucleic acids to the generic difference screening arrays disclosed herein and comparison of the hybridization patterns identifies those genes whose regulation is altered in the pathological state.

Similarly, the expression monitoring and generic difference screening methods of this invention can be used to monitor expression of various genes in response to defined stimuli, such as a drug, cell activation, *etc.* The methods are particularly advantageous because they permit simultaneous monitoring of the expression of large numbers of genes. This is especially useful in drug research if the end point description is a complex one, not simply asking if one particular gene is overexpressed or underexpressed. Thus, where a disease state or the mode of action of a drug is not well characterized, the methods of this invention allow rapid determination of the particularly relevant genes. Again, where the gene of interest is known or suspected, expression monitoring methods will preferably be used, while generic screening methods will be used when the particular genes of interest are unknown.

Using the generic difference screening methods disclosed herein, lack of knowledge regarding the particular genes does not prevent identification of useful therapeutics. For example, if the hybridization pattern on a particular high density array for a healthy cell is known and significantly different from the pattern for a diseased cell, the pattern for the diseased cell can be used to identify genes that are overexpressed or underexpressed. This provides a very detailed measure of the cellular response to a drug.

Generic difference screening methods thus provide a powerful tool for gene discovery and for elucidating mechanisms underlying complex cellular responses to various stimuli. For example, in one embodiment, generic difference screening can be used for "expression fingerprinting". Suppose it is found that the mRNA from a certain cell type displays a distinct overall hybridization pattern that is different under different conditions (*e.g.* when harboring mutations in particular genes, in a disease state). Then this pattern of expression (an expression fingerprint), if reproducible and clearly differentiable in the different cases can be used as a very detailed diagnostic. It is not even required that the pattern be fully interpretable, but just that it is specific for a particular cell state (and preferably of diagnostic and/or prognostic relevance).

Both expression monitoring methods and generic difference screening may also be used in drug safety studies. For example, if one is making a new antibiotic, then it should not significantly affect the expression profile for mammalian cells. The hybridization pattern could be used as a detailed measure of the effect of a drug on cells. In other words, as a toxicological screen.

The expression monitoring and generic difference screening methods of this invention are particularly well suited for gene discovery. For example, as explained above, the generic difference screening methods identify differences in abundances of nucleic acids in two or more samples. These differences may indicate changes in the expression levels of previously unknown genes. The sequence information provided by a difference screening array can be utilized, as described herein, to identify the unknown gene.

The expression monitoring methods can be used in gene discovery by exploiting the fact that many genes that have been discovered to date have been classified into families based on commonality of the sequences. Because of the extremely large number of probes it is possible to place in the high density array, it is possible to include oligonucleotide probes representing known or parts of known members from every gene class. In utilizing such a "chip" (high density array) genes that are already known could be identified. If a probe from a known gene family gives a positive signal, the result would indicate the possibility of a newly discovered gene.

The expression monitoring and generic difference screening methods of this invention thus also allow the development of "dynamic" gene databases. The Human Genome Project and commercial sequencing projects have generated large static databases which list thousands of sequences without regard to function or genetic interaction.

5 Analyses using the methods of this invention produces "dynamic" databases that define a gene's function and its interactions with other genes. Without the ability to monitor the expression of large numbers of genes simultaneously, or the ability to detect differences in abundances of large numbers of "unknown" nucleic acids simultaneously, the work of creating such a database is enormous.

10 The tedious nature of using DNA sequence analysis for determining an expression pattern involves preparing a cDNA library from the RNA isolated from the cells of interest and then sequencing the library. As the DNA is sequenced, the operator lists the sequences that are obtained and counts them. Thousands of sequences would have to be determined and then the frequency of those gene sequences would define the
15 expression pattern of genes for the cells being studied.

By contrast, using an expression monitoring, or generic difference screening, array to obtain the data according to the methods of this invention is relatively fast and easy. For example to in one embodiment, cells may be stimulated to induce expression. The RNA is obtained from the cells and then either labeled directly or a cDNA
20 copy is created. Fluorescent molecules may be incorporated during the DNA polymerization. Either the labeled RNA or the labeled cDNA is then hybridized to a high density array in one overnight experiment. The hybridization provides a quantitative assessment of the levels of every single one of the hybridized nucleic acids with no additional sequencing. In addition the methods of this invention are much more sensitive
25 allowing a few copies of expressed genes per cell to be detected. This procedure is demonstrated in the examples provided herein. These uses of the methods of this invention are intended to be illustrative and in no manner limiting.

High Density Arrays for Generic Difference Screening and
30 *Expression Monitoring*

As indicated above, this invention provides methods of monitoring (detecting and/or quantifying) the expression levels of a large number of nucleic acids and/or determining differences in nucleic acid concentrations (abundances) between two or more samples. The methods involve hybridization of one or more a nucleic acid samples (target nucleic acids) to one or more high density arrays of nucleic acid probes and then quantifying the amount of target nucleic acids hybridized to each probe in the array.

While nucleic acid hybridization has been used for some time to determine the expression levels of various genes (*e.g.*, Northern Blot), it was a surprising discovery of this invention that high density arrays are suitable for the quantification of the small variations in abundance (*e.g.*, transcription and, by implication, expression) of a nucleic acid (*e.g.*, gene) in the presence of a large population of heterogenous nucleic acids. The signal (*e.g.*, particular gene or gene product, or differentially abundant nucleic acid) may be present at a concentration of less than about 1 in 1,000, and is often present at a concentration less than 1 in 10,000 more preferably less than about 1 in 50,000 and most preferably less than about 1 in 100,000, 1 in 300,000, or even 1 in 1,000,000.

The oligonucleotide arrays can have oligonucleotides as short as 10 nucleotides, more preferably 15 oligonucleotides and most preferably 20 or 25 oligonucleotides are used to specifically detect and quantify nucleic acid expression levels. Where ligation discrimination methods are used, the oligonucleotide arrays can contain shorter oligonucleotides. In this instance, oligonucleotide arrays comprising oligonucleotides ranging in length from 6 to 15 nucleotides, more preferably from about 8 to about 12 nucleotides in length are preferred. Of course arrays containing longer oligonucleotides, as described herein, are also suitable.

The expression monitoring arrays, which are designed to detect particular preselected genes, provide for simultaneous monitoring of at least about 10, preferably at least about 100, more preferably at least about 1000, still more preferably at least about 10,000, and most preferably at least about 100,000 different genes.

Advantages of Oligonucleotide Arrays

In one preferred embodiment, the high density arrays used in the methods of this invention comprise chemically synthesized oligonucleotides. The use of chemically

synthesized oligonucleotide arrays, as opposed to, for example, blotted arrays of genomic clones, restriction fragments, oligonucleotides, and the like, offers numerous advantages.

These advantages generally fall into four categories:

- 1) Efficiency of production;
- 5 2) Reduced intra- and inter-array variability;
- 3) Increased information content; and
- 4) Improved signal to noise ratio.

1) Efficiency of production.

10 In a preferred embodiment, the arrays are synthesized using methods of spatially addressed parallel synthesis (*see, e.g.,* Section V, below). The oligonucleotides are synthesized chemically in a highly parallel fashion covalently attached to the array surface. This allows extremely efficient array production. For example, arrays containing any collection of tens (or even hundreds) of thousands of specifically selected 20 mer
15 oligonucleotides are synthesized in fewer than 80 synthesis cycles. The arrays are designed and synthesized based on sequence information alone. Thus, unlike blotting methods, the array preparation requires no handling of biological materials. There is no need for cloning steps, nucleic acid purifications or amplifications, cataloging of clones or amplification products, and the like. The preferred chemical synthesis of high density oligonucleotide
20 arrays in this invention is thus more efficient than blotting methods and permits the production of highly reproducible high-density arrays.

2) Reduced intra- and inter-array variability.

The use of chemically synthesized high-density oligonucleotide arrays in the
25 methods of this invention improves intra- and inter-array variability. The oligonucleotide arrays preferred for this invention are made in large batches (presently 49 arrays per wafer with multiple wafers synthesized in parallel) in a highly controlled manner. This results in high reproducibility of assays performed at different times and locations.

30 Because of the precise control obtainable during the chemical synthesis the arrays of this invention show less than about 25%, preferably less than about 20% more

preferably less than about 15%, still more preferably less than about 10%, even more preferably less than about 5%, and most preferably less than about 2% variation between high density arrays (within or between production batches) having the same probe composition. Array variation is assayed as the variation in hybridization intensity (against a labeled control target nucleic acid mixture) in one or more oligonucleotide probes between two or more arrays. More preferably, array variation is assayed as the variation in hybridization intensity (against a labeled control target nucleic acid mixture) measured for one or more target genes between two or more arrays.

In addition to reducing inter- and intra-array variability, chemically synthesized arrays also reduce variations in relative probe frequency inherent in spotting methods, particularly spotting methods that use cell-derived nucleic acids (*e.g.*, cDNAs). Many genes are expressed at the level of thousands of copies per cell, while others are expressed at only a single copy per cell. A cDNA library will reflect this very large bias as will a cDNA library made from this material. While normalization (adjustment of the amount of each different probe *e.g.*, by comparison to a reference cDNA) of the library will reduce the representation of over-expressed sequences to some extent, normalization has been shown to lessen the odds of selecting highly expressed cDNAs by only about a factor of 2 or 3. In contrast, chemical synthesis methods can insure that all oligonucleotide probes are represented in approximately equal concentrations. This decreases the inter-gene (intra-array) variability and permits direct comparison between hybridization signals for different oligonucleotide probes.

3) Increased information content.

i) Advantages for expression monitoring.

The use of high density oligonucleotide arrays for expression monitoring provides a number of advantages not found with other methods. For example, the use of large numbers of different probes that specifically bind to the transcription product of a particular gene allows for the detection of particular target genes and minimizes the possibility of errors due to cross-reactivity with other nucleic acid species.

Apparently suitable probes often prove ineffective for expression monitoring by hybridization. For example, certain subsequences of a particular target gene may be found in other regions of the genome and probes directed to these subsequences will cross-hybridize with the other regions and not provide a signal that is a meaningful measure of the expression level of the target gene. Even probes that show little cross reactivity may be unsuitable because they generally show poor hybridization due to the formation of structures that prevent effective hybridization. Finally, in sets with large numbers of probes, it is difficult to identify hybridization conditions that are optimal for all the probes in a set. Because of the high degree of redundancy provided by the large number of probes for each target gene, it is possible to eliminate those probes that function poorly under a given set of hybridization conditions and still retain enough probes to a particular target gene to provide an extremely sensitive and reliable measure of the expression level (transcription level) of that gene.

In addition, the use of large numbers of different probes to each target gene makes it possible to monitor expression of families of closely-related nucleic acids. The probes may be selected to hybridize both with subsequences that are conserved across the family and with subsequences that differ in the different nucleic acids in the family. Thus, hybridization with such arrays permits simultaneous monitoring of the various members of a gene family even where the various genes are approximately the same size and have high levels of homology. Such measurements are difficult or impossible with traditional hybridization methods.

ii) General advantages.

Because the high density arrays contain such a large number of probes it is possible to provide numerous controls including, for example, controls for variations or mutations in a particular gene, controls for overall hybridization conditions, controls for sample preparation conditions, controls for metabolic activity of the cell, etc.

Effective detection and quantitation of gene transcription in complex mammalian cell message populations can be determined with relatively short

oligonucleotides and with relative few (e.g., fewer than 40, preferably fewer than 30, more preferably fewer than 25, and most preferably fewer than 20, 15, or even 10)

oligonucleotide probes per gene. There are a large number of probes which hybridize both strongly and specifically for each gene. This does not mean that a large number of probes is required for detection, but rather that there are many from which to choose and that choices can be based on other considerations such as sequence uniqueness (gene families), checking for splice variants, or genotyping hot spots (things not easily done with cDNA spotting methods).

In use, sets of four arrays for expression monitoring are made that contain approximately 400,000 probes each. Sets of about 40 probes (20 probe pairs) are chosen that are complementary to each of about 40,000 genes for which there are ESTs in the public database. This set of ESTs covers roughly one-third to one-half of all human genes and these arrays will allow the levels of all of them to be monitored in a parallel set of overnight hybridizations.

4) Improved signal to noise ratio.

Blotted nucleic acids sometimes rely on ionic, electrostatic, and hydrophobic interactions to attach the blotted nucleic acids to the substrate. Bonds are formed at multiple points along the nucleic acid restricting degrees of freedom and interfering with the ability of the nucleic acid to hybridize to its complementary target. In contrast, the preferred arrays of this invention are chemically synthesized. The oligonucleotide probes are attached to the substrate by a single terminal covalent bond. The probes have more degrees of freedom and are capable of participating in complex interactions with their complementary targets. Consequently, the probe arrays of this invention show significantly higher hybridization efficiencies (10 times, 100 times, and even 1000 times more efficient) than blotted arrays. Less target oligonucleotide is used to produce a given signal thereby dramatically improving the signal to noise ratio.

are used in extremely complex nucleic acid mixtures

B) Preferred High Density Arrays

Preferred high density arrays of this invention comprise greater than about 100, preferably greater than about 1000, more preferably greater than about 16,000 and most preferably greater than about 65,000 or 250,000 or even greater than about 1,000,000 different oligonucleotide probes. The oligonucleotide probes range from about 5 to about 50 or about 5 to about 45 nucleotides, more preferably from about 10 to about 40 nucleotides and most preferably from about 15 to about 40 nucleotides in length. In particular preferred embodiments, the oligonucleotide probes are 20 or 25 nucleotides in length, while in other preferred embodiments (particularly where ligation discrimination reactions are used) the oligonucleotide probes are preferably shorter (e.g., 6 to 20 more preferably 8 to 15 nucleotides in length). It was a discovery of this invention that relatively short oligonucleotide probes sufficient to specifically hybridize to and distinguish target sequences. Thus in one preferred embodiment, the oligonucleotide probes are less than 50 nucleotides in length, generally less than 46 nucleotides, more generally less than 41 nucleotides, most generally less than 36 nucleotides, preferably less than 31 nucleotides, more preferably less than 26 nucleotides, and most preferably less than 21 nucleotides in length. The probes can also be less than 16 nucleotides, less than 13 nucleotides in length, less than 9 nucleotides in length and less than 7 nucleotides in length. It is also recognized that the oligonucleotide probes can be relatively long, ranging in length up to about 1000 nucleotides, more typically up to about 500 nucleotides in length.

The location and, in some embodiments, sequence of each different oligonucleotide probe in the array is known. Moreover, the large number of different probes occupies a relatively small area providing a high density array having a probe density of generally greater than about 60, more generally greater than about 100, most generally greater than about 600, often greater than about 1000, more often greater than about 5,000, most often greater than about 10,000, preferably greater than about 40,000 more preferably greater than about 100,000, and most preferably greater than about 400,000 different oligonucleotide probes per cm². The small area of the array

small area (less than about 1 cm²) and most preferably less than about 1/4 cm²) permits the use of small sample volumes and extremely uniform hybridization conditions (temperature regulation, salt

content, etc.) while the extremely large number of probes allows massively parallel processing of hybridizations.

Finally, because of the small area occupied by the high density arrays, hybridization may be carried out in extremely small fluid volumes (e.g., 250 μ l or less, more preferably 100 μ l or less, and most preferably 10 μ l or less). In addition, hybridization conditions are extremely uniform throughout the sample, and the hybridization format is amenable to automated processing.

III. Monitoring Gene Expression and Generic Difference Screening.

As explained above, this invention provides methods for monitoring gene expression (expression monitoring) and for identifying differences in abundance (concentration) of nucleic acids in two or more nucleic acid samples (generic difference screening). Generally the methods of monitoring gene expression of this invention involve (1) providing a pool of target nucleic acids comprising RNA transcript(s) of one or more target gene(s), or nucleic acids derived from the RNA transcript(s); (2) hybridizing the nucleic acid sample to a high density array of probes (including control probes); and (3) detecting the hybridized nucleic acids and calculating a relative expression (transcription) level. These methods preferably involve the use of high density oligonucleotide arrays containing probes to specifically preselected genes.

In contrast, the arrays used in the generic difference screening methods of this invention do not require that specific target genes be identified. To the contrary, the methods are designed to detect changes or differences in expression of various genes where the particular gene to be identified is unknown prior to performing the difference screening.

The methods of generic difference screening typically involve the steps of: 1) providing one or more high density oligonucleotide arrays (preferably including probes pairs differing in one or more nucleotides); 2) providing to the arrays:

several nucleic acids in the nucleic acid samples and probe oligonucleotides in the array(s); 3) detecting the hybridization of the nucleic acids to the arrays; and 4) determining the differences in hybridization between the nucleic acid samples

The provision of a nucleic acid sample, the hybridization of the sample to the arrays, and detection of the hybridized nucleic acid(s) is performed in essentially the same manner in expression monitoring and in generic difference screening methods. As disclosed herein, in preferred embodiments, the methods are distinguished, in part, by oligonucleotide probe selection, in the use of at least two nucleic acid samples in generic difference screening, and in subsequent analysis.

A) Providing a Nucleic Acid Sample.

In order to measure the nucleic acid concentration in a sample, it is desirable to provide a nucleic acid sample for such analysis. Where it is desired that the nucleic acid concentration, or differences in nucleic acid concentration between different samples, reflect transcription levels or differences in transcription levels of a gene or genes, it is desirable to provide a nucleic acid sample comprising mRNA transcript(s) of the gene or genes, or nucleic acids derived from the mRNA transcript(s). As used herein, a nucleic acid derived from an mRNA transcript refers to a nucleic acid for whose synthesis the mRNA transcript or a subsequence thereof has ultimately served as a template. Thus, a cDNA reverse transcribed from an mRNA, an RNA transcribed from that cDNA, a DNA amplified from the cDNA, an RNA transcribed from the amplified DNA, *etc.*, are all derived from the mRNA transcript and detection of such derived products is indicative of the presence and/or abundance of the original transcript in a sample. Thus, suitable samples include, but are not limited to, mRNA transcripts of the gene or genes, cDNA reverse transcribed from the mRNA, cRNA transcribed from the cDNA, DNA amplified from the genes, RNA transcribed from amplified DNA, and the like.

In a particularly preferred embodiment, where it is desired to quantify the transcription level (and thereby expression) of a one or more genes in a sample, the nucleic acid sample is one in which the concentration of the mRNA transcript(s) of the gene or genes, or the concentration of the nucleic acids derived from the mRNA transcript(s), is proportional to the transcription level of the gene or genes. It is preferred that the hybridization signal intensity be proportional to the amount of hybridized nucleic acid. While it is preferred that the proportionality be relatively strict (*e.g.*, a doubling in transcription rate results in a doubling in mRNA

transcript in the sample nucleic acid pool and a doubling in hybridization signal), one of skill will appreciate that the proportionality can be more relaxed and even non-linear.

Thus, for example, an assay where a 5 fold difference in concentration of the target mRNA results in a 3 to 6 fold difference in hybridization intensity is sufficient for most purposes.

- 5 Where more precise quantification is required appropriate controls can be run to correct for variations introduced in sample preparation and hybridization as described herein. In addition, serial dilutions of "standard" target mRNAs can be used to prepare calibration curves according to methods well known to those of skill in the art. Of course, where simple detection of the presence or absence of a transcript or large differences of changes
10 in nucleic acid concentration is desired, no elaborate control or calibration is required.

In the simplest embodiment, such a nucleic acid sample is the total mRNA or a total cDNA isolated and/or otherwise derived from a biological sample. The term "biological sample", as used herein, refers to a sample obtained from an organism or from components (e.g., cells) of an organism. The sample may be of any biological tissue or
15 fluid. Frequently the sample will be a "clinical sample" which is a sample derived from a patient. Such samples include, but are not limited to, sputum, blood, blood cells (e.g., white cells), tissue or fine needle biopsy samples, urine, peritoneal fluid, and pleural fluid, or cells therefrom. Biological samples may also include sections of tissues such as frozen sections taken for histological purposes.

- 20 The nucleic acid (either genomic DNA or mRNA) may be isolated from the sample according to any of a number of methods well known to those of skill in the art. One of skill will appreciate that where alterations in the copy number of a gene are to be detected genomic DNA is preferably isolated. Conversely, where expression levels of a gene or genes are to be detected, preferably RNA (mRNA) is isolated.

- 25 Methods of isolating total mRNA are well known to those of skill in the art. For example, methods of isolation and purification of nucleic acids are described in detail in Chapter 3 of *Laboratory Techniques in Biochemistry and Molecular Biology*

30 *Volume 1: General Methods*, and Chapter 10, *Laboratory Techniques in Biochemistry and Molecular Biology: Hybridization With Nucleic Acid Probes, Part I Theory and Nucleic Acid Preparation*, P. Tijssen, ed. Elsevier, N.Y. (1993))

In a preferred embodiment, the total nucleic acid is isolated from a given sample using, for example, an acid guanidinium-phenol-chloroform extraction method and polyA⁺ mRNA is isolated by oligo dT column chromatography or by using (dT)_n magnetic beads (see, e.g., Sambrook *et al.*, *Molecular Cloning: A Laboratory Manual* (2nd ed.), Vols. 1-3, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory, (1989), or *Current Protocols in Molecular Biology*, F. Ausubel *et al.*, ed. Greene Publishing and Wiley-Interscience, New York (1987)).

Frequently, it is desirable to amplify the nucleic acid sample prior to hybridization. One of skill in the art will appreciate that whatever amplification method is used, if a quantitative result is desired, care must be taken to use a method that maintains or controls for the relative frequencies of the amplified nucleic acids.

Methods of "quantitative" amplification are well known to those of skill in the art. For example, quantitative PCR involves simultaneously co-amplifying a known quantity of a control sequence using the same primers. This provides an internal standard that may be used to calibrate the PCR reaction. The high density array may then include probes specific to the internal standard for quantification of the amplified nucleic acid.

One preferred internal standard is a synthetic AW106 cRNA. The AW106 cRNA is combined with RNA isolated from the sample according to standard techniques known to those of skill in the art. The RNA is then reverse transcribed using a reverse transcriptase to provide copy DNA. The cDNA sequences are then amplified (e.g., by PCR) using labeled primers. The amplification products are separated, typically by electrophoresis, and the amount of radioactivity (proportional to the amount of amplified product) is determined. The amount of mRNA in the sample is then calculated by comparison with the signal produced by the known AW106 RNA standard. Detailed protocols for quantitative PCR are provided in *PCR Protocols, A Guide to Methods and Applications*, Innis *et al.*, Academic Press, Inc. N.Y., (1990).

Other suitable amplification methods include, but are not limited to:

1. *Amplification of cDNA*, Innis *et al.*, San Diego, (1990); ligase chain reaction (LCR) (see Wu and Wallace, *Genomics*, 4: 560 (1989), Landegren, *et al.*, *Science*, 241: 1077 (1988) and Barringer, *et al.*, *Gene*, 89: 117 (1990), transcription amplification (Kwoh, *et al.*, *Proc*

Natl. Acad. Sci. USA, 86: 1173 (1989)), and self-sustained sequence replication (Guatelli, *et al.*, *Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci. USA*, 87: 1874 (1990)).

In a particularly preferred embodiment, the sample mRNA is reverse transcribed with a reverse transcriptase and a primer consisting of oligo dT and a sequence encoding the phage T7 promoter to provide single stranded DNA template. The second DNA strand is polymerized using a DNA polymerase. After synthesis of double-stranded cDNA, T7 RNA polymerase is added and RNA is transcribed from the cDNA template. Successive rounds of transcription from each single cDNA template results in amplified RNA. Methods of *in vitro* polymerization are well known to those of skill in the art (*see, e.g.*, Sambrook, *supra.*) and this particular method is described in detail by Van Gelder, *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 87: 1663-1667 (1990) who demonstrate that *in vitro* amplification according to this method preserves the relative frequencies of the various RNA transcripts. Moreover, Eberwine *et al.* *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 89: 3010-3014 provide a protocol that uses two rounds of amplification via *in vitro* transcription to achieve greater than 10^6 fold amplification of the original starting material thereby permitting expression monitoring even where biological samples are limited.

It will be appreciated by one of skill in the art that the direct transcription method described above provides an antisense (aRNA) pool. Where antisense RNA is used as the target nucleic acid, the oligonucleotide probes provided in the array are chosen to be complementary to subsequences of the antisense nucleic acids. Conversely, where the target nucleic acid pool is a pool of sense nucleic acids, the oligonucleotide probes are selected to be complementary to subsequences of the sense nucleic acids. Finally, where the nucleic acid pool is double stranded, the probes may be of either sense as the target nucleic acids include both sense and antisense strands.

The protocols cited above include methods of generating pools of either sense or antisense nucleic acids. Indeed, one approach can be used to generate either sense or antisense nucleic acids as desired. For example, the cDNA can be directionally cloned into a vector (e.g., Stratagene, *Stratagene*, La Jolla, CA) which contains a T7 promoter.

One sense (the sense depending on the orientation of the insert), while *in vitro* transcription with the T7 polymerase will produce RNA having the opposite sense. Other

suitable cloning systems include phage lambda vectors designed for Cre-*loxP* plasmid subcloning (see e.g., Palazzolo *et al.*, *Gene*, 88: 25-36 (1990)).

In a particularly preferred embodiment, a high activity RNA polymerase (e.g. about 2500 units/ μ L for T7, available from Epicentre Technologies) is used.

5

B) Labeling nucleic acids.

i) Labeling methods/strategies.

In a preferred embodiment, the hybridized nucleic acids are detected by detecting one or more labels attached to the sample nucleic acids. The labels may be incorporated by any of a number of means well known to those of skill in the art. However, in a preferred embodiment, the label is simultaneously incorporated during the amplification step in the preparation of the sample nucleic acids. For example, polymerase chain reaction (PCR) with labeled primers or labeled nucleotides will provide a labeled amplification product. The nucleic acid (e.g., DNA) is amplified in the presence of labeled deoxynucleotide triphosphates (dNTPs). The amplified nucleic acid can be fragmented, exposed to an oligonucleotide array, and the extent of hybridization determined by the amount of label now associated with the array. In a preferred embodiment, transcription amplification, as described above, using a labeled nucleotide (e.g. fluorescein-labeled UTP and/or CTP) incorporates a label into the transcribed nucleic acids.

20

Alternatively, a label may be added directly to the original nucleic acid sample (e.g., mRNA, polyA mRNA, cDNA, *etc.*) or to the amplification product after the amplification is completed. Such labeling can result in the increased yield of amplification products and reduce the time required for the amplification reaction. Means of attaching labels to nucleic acids include, for example nick translation or end-labeling (e.g. with a labeled RNA) by kinasing of the nucleic acid and subsequent attachment (ligation) of a nucleic acid linker joining the sample nucleic acid to a label (e.g. a fluorophore).

25

Labels useful in the present invention include any composition detectable by spectroscopic, photochemical, biochemical, immunochemical, electrical, optical or chemical means. Useful labels in the present invention include biotin

for staining with labeled streptavidin conjugate, magnetic beads (*e.g.*, Dynabeads™), fluorescent dyes (*e.g.*, fluorescein, texas red, rhodamine, green fluorescent protein, and the like, *see, e.g.*, Molecular Probes, Eugene, Oregon, USA), radiolabels (*e.g.*, ^3H , ^{125}I , ^{35}S , ^{14}C , or ^{32}P), enzymes (*e.g.*, horse radish peroxidase, alkaline phosphatase and others commonly used in an ELISA), and colorimetric labels such as colloidal gold (*e.g.*, gold particles in the 40 -80 nm diameter size range scatter green light with high efficiency) or colored glass or plastic (*e.g.*, polystyrene, polypropylene, latex, etc.) beads. Patents teaching the use of such labels include U.S. Patent Nos. 3,817,837; 3,850,752; 3,939,350; 3,996,345; 4,277,437; 4,275,149; and 4,366,241.

10 A fluorescent label is preferred because it provides a very strong signal with low background. It is also optically detectable at high resolution and sensitivity through a quick scanning procedure. The nucleic acid samples can all be labeled with a single label, *e.g.*, a single fluorescent label. Alternatively, in another embodiment, different nucleic acid samples can be simultaneously hybridized where each nucleic acid sample has a different
15 label. For instance, one target could have a green fluorescent label and a second target could have a red fluorescent label. The scanning step will distinguish sites of binding of the red label from those binding the green fluorescent label. Each nucleic acid sample (target nucleic acid) can be analyzed independently from one another.

Suitable chromogens which can be employed include those molecules and
20 compounds which absorb light in a distinctive range of wavelengths so that a color can be observed or, alternatively, which emit light when irradiated with radiation of a particular wave length or wave length range, *e.g.*, fluorescers.

A wide variety of suitable dyes are available, being primary chosen to provide an intense color with minimal absorption by their surroundings. Illustrative dye
25 types include quinoline dyes, triarylmethane dyes, acridine dyes, alizarine dyes, phthaleins, insect dyes, azo dyes, anthraquinoid dyes, cyanine dyes, phenazathionium dyes, and phenazoxonium dyes.

Fluorescent molecules of interest fall into a variety of categories having certain primary functionalities. These primary functionalities include 1- and 2-aminonaphthalene, p,p'-diaminostilbenes, pyrenes, quaternary

phenanthridine salts, 9-aminoacridines, p,p'-diaminobenzophenone imines, anthracenes, oxacarbocyanine, merocyanine, 3-aminoequilenin, perylene, bisbenzoxazole, bis-p-oxazolyl benzene, 1,2-benzophenazin, retinol, bis-3-aminopyridinium salts, hellebrigenin, tetracycline, sterophenol, benzimidazoarylphenylamine, 2-oxo-3-chromen, indole, xanthen, 7-hydroxycoumarin, phenoxazine, salicylate, strophanthidin, porphyrins, triarylmethanes and flavin. Individual fluorescent compounds which have functionalities for linking or which can be modified to incorporate such functionalities include, *e.g.*, dansyl chloride; fluoresceins such as 3,6-dihydroxy-9-phenylxanthhydrol; rhodamineisothiocyanate; N-phenyl 1-amino-8-sulfonatonaphthalene; N-phenyl 2-amino-6-sulfonatonaphthalene; 4-acetamido-4-isothiocyanato-stilbene-2,2'-disulfonic acid; pyrene-3-sulfonic acid; 2-toluidinonaphthalene-6-sulfonate; N-phenyl, N-methyl 2-aminoaphthalene-6-sulfonate; ethidium bromide; tebrine; auromine-0,2-(9'-anthroyl)palmitate; dansyl phosphatidylethanolamine; N,N'-dioctadecyl oxacarbocyanine; N,N'-dihexyl oxacarbocyanine; merocyanine, 4(3'pyrenyl)butyrate; d-3-aminodesoxy-equilenin; 12-(9'anthroyl)stearate; 2-methylantracene; 9-vinylnanthracene; 2,2'(vinylene-p-phenylene)bisbenzoxazole; p-bis[2-(4-methyl-5-phenyl-oxazolyl)]benzene; 6-dimethylamino-1,2-benzophenazin; retinol; bis(3'-aminopyridinium) 1,10-decandiyl diiodide; sulfonaphthylhydrazones of hellibrienin; chlorotetracycline; N(7-dimethylamino-4-methyl-2-oxo-3-chromenyl)maleimide; N-[p-(2-benzimidazolyl)-phenyl]maleimide; N-(4-fluoranthyl)maleimide; bis(homovanillic acid); resazurin; 4-chloro-7-nitro-2,1,3-benzooxadiazole; merocyanine 540; resorufin; rose bengal; and 2,4-diphenyl-3(2H)-furanone.

Desirably, fluorescers should absorb light above about 300 nm, preferably about 350 nm, and more preferably above about 400 nm, usually emitting at wavelengths greater than about 10 nm higher than the wavelength of the light absorbed. It should be noted that the absorption and emission characteristics of the bound dye can differ from the unbound dye. Therefore, when referring to the various wavelength ranges in

1. Non-polar solvents are an arbitrary solvent

Fluorescers are generally preferred because by irradiating a fluorescer with light, one can obtain a plurality of emissions. Thus, a single label can provide for a plurality of measurable events.

Detectable signal can also be provided by chemiluminescent and bioluminescent sources. Chemiluminescent sources include a compound which becomes electronically excited by a chemical reaction and can then emit light which serves as the detectible signal or donates energy to a fluorescent acceptor. A diverse number of families of compounds have been found to provide chemiluminescence under a variety of conditions. One family of compounds is 2,3-dihydro-1,4-phthalazinedione. The most popular compound is luminol, which is the 5-amino compound. Other members of the family include the 5-amino-6,7,8-trimethoxy- and the dimethylamino[ca]benz analog. These compounds can be made to luminesce with alkaline hydrogen peroxide or calcium hypochlorite and base. Another family of compounds is the 2,4,5-triphenylimidazoles, with lophine as the common name for the parent product. Chemiluminescent analogs include para-dimethylamino and -methoxy substituents. Chemiluminescence can also be obtained with oxalates, usually oxalyl active esters, *e.g.*, p-nitrophenyl and a peroxide, *e.g.*, hydrogen peroxide, under basic conditions. Alternatively, luciferins can be used in conjunction with luciferase or lucigenins to provide bioluminescence.

Spin labels are provided by reporter molecules with an unpaired electron spin which can be detected by electron spin resonance (ESR) spectroscopy. Exemplary spin labels include organic free radicals, transitional metal complexes, particularly vanadium, copper, iron, and manganese, and the like. Exemplary spin labels include nitroxide free radicals.

The label may be added to the target (sample) nucleic acid(s) prior to, or after the hybridization. So called "direct labels" are detectable labels that are directly attached to or incorporated into the target (sample) nucleic acid prior to hybridization. In contrast, so called "indirect labels" are joined to the hybrid duplex after hybridization.

For example, in an indirect labeling scheme, the target nucleic acid may be biotinylated before the hybridization. After hybridization, an avidin-conjugated fluorophore will bind the biotin bearing hybrid duplexes providing a label that is easily

detected. For a detailed review of methods of labeling nucleic acids and detecting labeled hybridized nucleic acids see *Laboratory Techniques in Biochemistry and Molecular Biology, Vol. 24: Hybridization With Nucleic Acid Probes*, P. Tijssen, ed. Elsevier, N.Y., (1993)).

5 Fluorescent labels are preferred and easily added during an *in vitro* transcription reaction. In a preferred embodiment, fluorescein labeled UTP and CTP are incorporated into the RNA produced in an *in vitro* transcription reaction as described above.

 The labels can be attached directly or through a linker moiety. In general,
10 the site of label or linker-label attachment is not limited to any specific position. For example, a label may be attached to a nucleoside, nucleotide, or analogue thereof at any position that does not interfere with detection or hybridization as desired. For example, certain Label-ON Reagents from Clontech (Palo Alto, CA) provide for labeling interspersed throughout the phosphate backbone of an oligonucleotide and for terminal
15 labeling at the 3' and 5' ends. As shown for example herein, labels can be attached at positions on the ribose ring or the ribose can be modified and even eliminated as desired. The base moieties of useful labeling reagents can include those that are naturally occurring or modified in a manner that does not interfere with the purpose to which they are put. Modified bases include but are not limited to 7-deaza A and G, 7-deaza-8-aza A and G,
20 and other heterocyclic moieties.

ii. End-labeling nucleic acids.

 In many applications it is useful to directly label nucleic acid samples without having to go through an amplification, transcription or other nucleic acid
25 conversion step. This is especially true for monitoring of mRNA levels where one would like to extract total cytoplasmic RNA or poly A⁺ RNA (mRNA) from cells and hybridize this material without any intermediate steps that could take the sample off target.

 In general, end-labeling methods permit the optimization of the size of the
30 nucleic acid to be labeled. End-labeling methods also decrease the sequence bias

sometimes associated with polymerase-facilitated labeling methods. End labeling can be performed using terminal transferase (TdT).

End labeling can also be accomplished by ligating a labeled oligonucleotide or analog thereof to the end of a target nucleic acid or probe. Other end-labeling methods include the creation of a labeled or unlabeled "tail" for the nucleic acid using ligase or terminal transferase, for example. The tailed nucleic acid is then exposed to a labeled moiety that will preferentially associate with the tail. The tail and the moiety that preferentially associates with the tail can be a polymer such as a nucleic acid, peptide, or carbohydrate. The tail and its recognition moiety can be anything that permits recognition between the two, and includes molecules having ligand-substrate relationships such as haptens, epitopes, antibodies, enzymes and their substrates, and complementary nucleic acids and analogs thereof.

The labels associated with the tail or the tail recognition moiety include detectable moieties. When the tail and its recognition moiety are both labeled, the respective labels associated with each can themselves have a ligand-substrate relationship. The respective labels can also comprise energy transfer reagents such as dyes having different spectroscopic characteristics. The energy transfer pair can be chosen to obtain the desired combined spectral characteristics. For example, a first dye that absorbs at a wavelength shorter than that absorbed by the second dye can, upon absorption at that shorter wavelength, transfer energy to the second dye. The second dye then emits electromagnetic radiation at a wavelength longer than would have been emitted by the first dye alone. Energy transfer reagents can be particularly useful in two-color labeling schemes such as those set forth in a copending U.S. patent application, filed December 23, 1996, Attorney Docket No. 2013.2, and which is a continuation-in-part of USSN 08/529,115, filed September 15, 1995, and Int'l Appln. No. WO 96/14839, filed September 13, 1996, which is also a continuation-in-part of USSN 08/670,118, filed on June 25, 1996, which is a division of USSN 08/168,904, filed December 15, 1993, which is a continuation-in-part of

EXAMPLES

This invention thus provides methods of labeling a nucleic acid and reagents useful therefor. Many of the methods disclosed herein involve end-labeling

Those skilled in the art will appreciate that the invention as disclosed is generally applicable in the chemical and molecular-biological arts.

In one embodiment, the method involves providing a nucleic acid, providing a labeled oligonucleotide and enzymatically ligating the oligonucleotide to the nucleic acid. Thus, for example, where the nucleic acid is an RNA, a labeled riboligonucleotide can be ligated using an RNA ligase. RNA ligase catalyzes the covalent joining of single-stranded RNA (or DNA, but the reaction with RNA is more efficient) with a 5' phosphate group to the 3'-OH end of another piece of RNA (or DNA). The specific requirements for the use of this enzyme are provided in *The Enzymes, Volume XV, Part B, T4 RNA Ligase*, Uhlenbeck and Greensport, pages 31-58; and 5.66-5.69 in Sambrook *et al.*, *Molecular Cloning, A Laboratory Manual*, Cold Spring Harbor Press, Cold Spring Harbor, New York (1982)

This invention thus provides a method to add a label to the nucleic acid (e.g. extracted RNA) directly rather than incorporating labeled nucleotides in a nucleic acid polymerization step. This can be accomplished by adding a short labeled oligonucleotide to the ends of a single stranded nucleic acid. The method more fully labels a sample; a higher percentage of available molecules will be labeled than by conventional techniques.

RNA can be randomly fragmented with heat in the presence of Mg^{2+} . This generally produces RNA fragments with 5' OH groups and phosphorylated 3' ends. A phosphate group is added to the 5' ends of the fragments using standard protocols with T4 Polynucleotide Kinase, or similar enzyme. To the pool of 5'-phosphorylated RNA fragments is added RNA ligase plus a short RNA oligonucleotide with a 3' OH group and a label, either at the 5' end (such as fluorescein or other dye, or biotin for later labeling with a streptavidin conjugate, or with dioxigenin for later labeling with a labeled antibody) or with one or more labeled bases. A riboA₆ (deoxyribonucleic acid 6 mer poly A) labeled with either fluorescein or biotin at the 5' end provides a particularly preferred label. In another embodiment, the ligated RNA oligonucleotide can have a ribonucleotide sequence

wherein A is adenine, C is cytosine, G is guanine, and U is uracil. The oligonucleotide is a linker or a primer and can have a virtually any sequence. However, the ligation reaction is most efficient with A and least efficient with U at the 3' end of the acceptor. The reaction is allowed to proceed under standard conditions. Unincorporated RNA 6-

mers can be removed by a simple size selection step (e.g. electrophoresis, NAP column, etc.) if necessary following the ligation reaction.

An advantage of this procedure is that extracted mRNA can be used directly and that each fragment should be labeled once, not any number of times depending on the sequence as is the case when labeled bases are incorporated during polymerization reactions.

In another embodiment, fragmented DNA can also be end-labeled using a different procedure with a different enzyme. Terminal transferase will add deoxynucleoside triphosphates (dNTPs), which can be labeled, to the 3' OH ends of single stranded DNA. Single dNTPs can be added if modified nucleotides are used (for example, dideoxynucleotide triphosphates), or multiple bases can be added if desired. DNA can be fragmented either physically (shearing) or enzymatically (nucleases), or chemically (e.g. acid hydrolysis). Following fragmentation, depending on the method, 3' OH ends may need to be produced. The DNA fragments are then labeled using labeled dNTPs or ddNTPs in the presence of terminal transferase.

Various other embodiments are illustrated by the Examples provided herein and their associated figures.

C) Modifying Sample to Improve Signal to Noise Ratio.

The nucleic acid sample may be modified prior to hybridization to the high density probe array in order to reduce sample complexity thereby decreasing background signal and improving sensitivity of the measurement. In one embodiment, complexity reduction for expression monitoring methods is achieved by selective degradation of background mRNA. This is accomplished by hybridizing the sample mRNA (e.g., polyA⁺ RNA) with a pool of DNA oligonucleotides that hybridize specifically with the regions to which the probes in the expression monitoring array specifically hybridize. In a preferred embodiment, the pool of oligonucleotides consists of the same probe oligonucleotides as found on the high density array.

The hybridized sample is then treated with RNase A, a nuclease that specifically digests single stranded RNA. The

RNase A is then inhibited, using a protease and/or commercially available RNase inhibitors, and the double stranded nucleic acids are then separated from the digested single stranded RNA. This separation may be accomplished in a number of ways well known to those of skill in the art including, but not limited to, electrophoresis, and gradient centrifugation. However, in a preferred embodiment, the pool of DNA oligonucleotides is provided attached to beads forming thereby a nucleic acid affinity column. After digestion with the RNase A, the hybridized DNA is removed simply by denaturing (*e.g.*, by adding heat or increasing salt) the hybrid duplexes and washing the previously hybridized mRNA off in an elution buffer.

The undigested mRNA fragments which will be hybridized to the probes in the high density array or other solid support are then preferably end-labeled with a fluorophore attached to an RNA linker using an RNA ligase. This procedure produces a labeled sample RNA pool in which the nucleic acids that do not correspond to probes in the array are eliminated and thus unavailable to contribute to a background signal.

Another method of reducing sample complexity involves hybridizing the mRNA with deoxyoligonucleotides that hybridize to regions that border on either side the regions to which the high density array probes are directed. Treatment with RNase H selectively digests the double stranded (hybrid duplexes) leaving a pool of single-stranded mRNA corresponding to the short regions (*e.g.*, 20 mer) that were formerly bounded by the deoxyoligonucleotide probes and which correspond to the targets of the high density array probes and longer mRNA sequences that correspond to regions between the targets of the probes of the high density array. The short RNA fragments are then separated from the long fragments (*e.g.*, by electrophoresis), labeled if necessary as described above, and then are ready for hybridization with the high density probe array.

In a third approach, sample complexity reduction involves the selective removal of particular (preselected) mRNA messages. In particular, highly expressed mRNA messages that are not specifically probed by the probes in the high density array are removed. A probe is selected that specifically hybridizes to the preselected message close to the (poly A) end. The probe may be selected to provide high specificity and low cross reactivity. Treatment of the hybridized message/probe complex with RNase H digests the

double stranded region effectively removing the polyA⁺ tail from the rest of the message. The sample is then treated with methods that specifically retain or amplify polyA⁺ RNA (e.g., an oligo dT column or (dT)_n magnetic beads). Such methods will not retain or amplify the selected message(s) as they are no longer associated with a polyA⁺ tail. These highly expressed messages are effectively removed from the sample providing a sample that has reduced background mRNA.

IV. Hybridization Array Design.

A) Probe Composition.

One of skill in the art will appreciate that an enormous number of array designs are suitable for the practice of this invention. Generic difference screening arrays, for example may include random, haphazardly selected, or arbitrary probe sets. Alternatively, the generic difference screening arrays may include all possible oligonucleotides of a particular pre-selected length. Conversely, other expression monitoring arrays typically include a number of probes that specifically hybridize to the nucleic acid(s) expression of which is to be detected. In a preferred embodiment, the array will include one or more control probes.

1) Test probes.

In its simplest embodiment, the high density array includes "test probes" (also referred to as probe oligonucleotides) more than 5 bases long, preferably more than 10 bases long, and some more than 40 bases long. In some embodiments, the probes are less than 50 bases long. In some cases, these oligonucleotides range from about 5 to about 45 or 5 to about 50 nucleotides long, more preferably from about 10 to about 40 nucleotides long, and most preferably from about 15 to about 40 nucleotides in length. In other particularly preferred embodiments the probes are 20 or 25 nucleotides in length. In preselected expression monitoring arrays, these probe oligonucleotides have a sequence that is complementary to the target nucleic acid. In other embodiments, probes are capable of specifically hybridizing to the target nucleic acid they are to detect.

In high density oligonucleotide arrays, designed for generic difference screening, the probe oligonucleotides need not be selected to hybridize to particular preselected subsequences of genes. To the contrary, preferred generic difference screening arrays comprise probe oligonucleotides whose sequences are random, arbitrary, or haphazard. Alternatively, the probe oligonucleotides may include all possible nucleotides of a given length (*e.g.*, all possible 4 mers, all possible 5 mers, all possible 6 mers, all possible 7 mers, all possible 8 mers, all possible 9 mers, all possible 10 mers, all possible 11 mers, all possible 12 mers, *etc.*)

A random oligonucleotide array is an array in which the pool of nucleotide sequences of a particular length does not significantly deviate from a pool of nucleotide sequences selected in a random manner (*i.e.*, blind, unbiased selection) from a collection of all possible sequences of that length.

Arbitrary or haphazard nucleotide arrays of probe oligonucleotides are arrays in which the probe oligonucleotide selection is selected without identifying and/or preselecting target nucleic acids. Arbitrary or haphazard nucleotide arrays may approximate or even be random, however there is no assurance that they meet a statistical definition of randomness.

The arrays may reflect some nucleotide selection based on probe composition, and/or non-redundancy of probes, and/or coding sequence bias as described herein. In a preferred embodiment, however such "biased" probe sets are still not chosen to be specific for any particular genes.

An array comprising all possible oligonucleotides of a particular length refers to an array that contains oligonucleotides having sequences corresponding to substantially every permutation of a sequence. Thus since the probe oligonucleotides of this invention preferably include up to 4 bases (A, G, C, T) or (A, G, C, U) or derivatives of these bases, an array having all possible nucleotides of length X contains substantially 4^X different nucleic acids (*e.g.*, 16 different nucleotides of length 2, 64 of length 3, 256 of length 4, *etc.*). It is appreciated that some small number of sequences may be inadvertently absent from a pool of all possible nucleotides of a particular length due to synthesis problems, inadvertent cleavage, *etc.*). Thus, it will be appreciated that an array comprising all possible nucleotides of

length X refers to an array having substantially all possible nucleotides of length X. Substantially all possible nucleotides of length X includes more than 90%, typically more than 95%, preferably more than 98%, more preferably more than 99%, and most preferably more than 99.9% of the possible number of different nucleotides.

- 5 The probe oligonucleotides described above can additionally include a constant domain. A constant domain being a nucleotide subsequence that is common to substantially all of the probe oligonucleotides. Particularly preferred constant domains are located at the terminus of the oligonucleotide probe closest to the substrate (*i.e.*, attached to the linker/anchor molecule). The constant regions may comprise virtually any sequence.
- 10 However, in one embodiment, the constant regions comprise a sequence or subsequence complementary to the sense or antisense strand of a restriction site (a nucleic acid sequence recognized by a restriction endonuclease).

 The constant domain can be synthesized *de novo* on the array.

- Alternatively, the constant region may be prepared in a separate procedure and then
- 15 coupled intact to the array. Since the constant domain can be synthesized separately and then the intact constant subsequences coupled to the high density array, the constant domain can be virtually any length. Some constant domains range from 3 nucleotides to about 500 nucleotides in length, more typically from about 3 nucleotides in length to about 100 nucleotides in length, most typically from 3 nucleotides in length to about 50
- 20 nucleotides in length. In particular embodiments, constant domains range from 3 nucleotides to about 45 nucleotides in length, more preferably from 3 nucleotides in length to about 25 nucleotides in length and most preferably from 3 to about 15 or even 10 nucleotides in length. In other embodiments, preferred constant regions range from about 5 nucleotides to about 15 nucleotides in length.

- 25 In addition to test probes that bind the target nucleic acid(s) of interest, the high density array can contain a number of control probes. The control probes fall into three categories referred to herein as 1) Normalization controls; 2) Expression level controls; and 3) Mismatch controls.

2) *Normalization controls.*

Normalization controls are oligonucleotide probes that are perfectly complementary to labeled reference oligonucleotides that are added to the nucleic acid sample. The signals obtained from the normalization controls after hybridization provide a control for variations in hybridization conditions, label intensity, "reading" efficiency and other factors that may cause the signal of a perfect hybridization to vary between arrays. In a preferred embodiment, signals (e.g., fluorescence intensity) read from all other probes in the array are divided by the signal (e.g., fluorescence intensity) from the control probes thereby normalizing the measurements.

Virtually any probe may serve as a normalization control. However, it is recognized that hybridization efficiency varies with base composition and probe length. Preferred normalization probes are selected to reflect the average length of the other probes present in the array, however, they can be selected to cover a range of lengths. The normalization control(s) can also be selected to reflect the (average) base composition of the other probes in the array, however in a preferred embodiment, only one or a few normalization probes are used and they are selected such that they hybridize well (*i.e.* no secondary structure) and do not match any target-specific probes.

Normalization probes can be localized at any position in the array or at multiple positions throughout the array to control for spatial variation in hybridization efficiently. In a preferred embodiment, the normalization controls are located at the corners or edges of the array as well as in the middle.

3) *Expression level controls.*

Expression level controls are probes that hybridize specifically with constitutively expressed genes in the biological sample. Expression level controls are designed to control for the overall health and metabolic activity of a cell. Examination of the covariance of an expression level control with the expression level of the target gene can be used to control for general variations in health of the cell. Thus, for example, when a cell is in poor health or lacking a critical metabolite the expression levels of both an active target gene and a constitutively expressed gene are

expected to decrease. The converse is also true. Thus where the expression levels of both an expression level control and the target gene appear to both decrease or to both increase, the change may be attributed to changes in the metabolic activity of the cell as a whole, not to differential expression of the target gene in question. Conversely, where the expression
5 levels of the target gene and the expression level control do not covary, the variation in the expression level of the target gene is attributed to differences in regulation of that gene and not to overall variations in the metabolic activity of the cell.

Virtually any constitutively expressed gene provides a suitable target for expression level controls. Typically expression level control probes have sequences
10 complementary to subsequences of constitutively expressed "housekeeping genes" including, but not limited to the β -actin gene, the transferrin receptor gene, the GAPDH gene, and the like.

4) *Mismatch controls.*

15 Mismatch controls may also be provided for the probes to the target genes, for expression level controls or for normalization controls. Mismatch controls are oligonucleotide probes identical to their corresponding test or control probes except for the presence of one or more mismatched bases. A mismatched base is a base selected so that it is not complementary to the corresponding base in the target sequence to which the probe
20 would otherwise specifically hybridize. One or more mismatches are selected such that under appropriate hybridization conditions (e.g. stringent conditions) the test or control probe would be expected to hybridize with its target sequence, but the mismatch probe would not hybridize (or would hybridize to a significantly lesser extent). Preferred mismatch probes contain a central mismatch. Thus, for example, where a probe is a 20
25 mer, a corresponding mismatch probe will have the identical sequence except for a single base mismatch (e.g., substituting a G, a C or a T for an A) at any of positions 6 through 14 (the central mismatch).

It is noted that a mismatch probe cannot be *a priori* determined, designed, or selected. In this instance, the probes are preferably provided as pairs where each pair of probes differ in one or more preselected nucleotides. Thus, while

it is not known *a priori* which of the probes in the pair is the perfect match, it is known that when one probe specifically hybridizes to a particular target sequence, the other probe of the pair will act as a mismatch control for that target sequence. It will be appreciated that the perfect match and mismatch probes need not be provided as pairs, but may be
5 provided as larger collections (*e.g.*, 3, 4, 5, or more) of probes that differ from each other in particular preselected nucleotides.

In both expression monitoring and generic difference screening arrays, mismatch probes provide a control for non-specific binding or cross-hybridization to a nucleic acid in the sample other than the target to which the probe is complementary.
10 Mismatch probes thus indicate whether a hybridization is specific or not. For example, if the complementary target is present the perfect match probes should be consistently brighter than the mismatch probes. In addition, if all central mismatches are present, the mismatch probes can be used to detect a mutation. Finally, it was also a discovery of the present invention that the difference in intensity between the perfect match and the
15 mismatch probe (I(PM)-I(MM)) provides a good measure of the concentration of the hybridized material.

5) Sample preparation/amplification/quantitation controls.

The high density array may also include sample preparation/amplification
20 control probes. These are probes that are complementary to subsequences of control genes selected because they do not normally occur in the nucleic acids of the particular biological sample being assayed. Suitable sample preparation/amplification control probes include, for example, probes to bacterial genes (*e.g.*, Bio B) where the sample in question is a biological from a eukaryote.

25 The RNA sample is then spiked with a known amount of the nucleic acid to which the sample preparation/amplification control probe is directed before processing. Quantification of the hybridization of the sample preparation/amplification control probe

processing steps (e.g., RT, reverse transcription, *in vitro* transcription, etc.)

30 Quantitation controls are similar. Typically they are combined with the sample nucleic acid(s) in known amounts prior to hybridization. They are useful to

provide a quantitation reference and permit determination of a standard curve for quantifying hybridization amounts (concentrations).

B) Probe Selection and Optimization.

5 ***i) Generic difference screening arrays***

a) Assumption-free probe selection.

As explained above, probe oligonucleotide selection for generic difference screening arrays can be random, arbitrary haphazard, composition biased, or include all possible oligonucleotides of a particular length. Probe choice is thus essentially
10 assumption free. In some embodiments, however, particular oligonucleotides may be excluded from the array or from analysis. For example, probes that contain palindromic sequences or probes that contain long stretches of all As, Cs, Gs, Ts, etc. may be excluded. Probes for exclusion may be identified by hybridizing a single array to the same sample multiple times and/or hybridizing different copies of the array to the same sample. Probes
15 that show an unacceptable variation (variation above a particular threshold value) in hybridization intensity against the same sample may be excluded (either in array construction or in signal analysis). The variation level at which a probe may be excluded is a function of the sensitivity desired of the assay. The more sensitive an assay is desired, the lower the exclusion threshold is set. In a preferred embodiment, the probe is excluded
20 when the variation in hybridization intensity exceeds 2 times the background signal and has a relative variation of more than 50%.

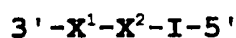
Alternatively such exclusion may be inherent in the selective identification of differentially hybridizing sequences where the difference between a test nucleic acid sample and a reference nucleic acid sample is compared to the difference between the
25 reference nucleic acid sample and itself. This is described more fully below in Section IX(B).

30 utilize a longer (and hence more specific and stable) probe without increasing the number of probe oligonucleotides necessary to hybridize to all possible sequences. Amino acid side chains are not covered by the first and second positions of the nucleotide, while the third

position is highly redundant. Moreover each species or organism favors particular codons to encode any particular amino acid. The preferred codon for a particular amino acid in a particular species being the codon that is used at the highest frequency for that species. Codon preferences are well known to those of skill in the art. They can also be readily determined by a simple frequency analysis of the nucleotide sequences of a particular organism or species.

Similarly, the di, tri-, tetra-nucleotide frequency biases of an particular organism or species can be used to weight the selection of oligonucleotide probes used in "composition biased" generic difference screening array.

In one preferred embodiment, the probe oligonucleotides are prepared having the first two nucleotides in each codon being fixed but allowing the third nucleotide to vary (either by use of a 4 way wobble or by the use of inosine or other non-specifically hybridizing base). In a preferred embodiment, each codon of the probe will have the general formula



where I is inosine or a 4-way wobble and X¹ and X² are A, G, C, T/U selected according to the preferred codon usage for a particular species. Thus, for example, an array of 16 mers that will hybridize to substantially all nucleic acids of a particular species can be prepared where the probes have the formula:

Support- $I^1-X^2X^3I^4-X^5X^6I^7-X^8X^9I^{10}-X^{11}X^{12}I^{13}-X^{14}X^{15}I^{16}-3$

with only 4^{10} different probe oligonucleotides. Suitable codons for this probe are illustrated in Table 1.

Table 1. Preferred sequences for generic coding sequence 16 mer probe oligonucleotides. (Derived from standard table of amino acid codons (the genetic code).)

Derived from standard table of amino acid codons (see general code)																
	Codon 5			Codon 4			Codon 3			Codon 2			Codon 1			
I ¹	X ²	X ³	I ⁴	X ⁵	X ⁶	I ⁷	X ⁸	X ⁹	I ¹⁰	X ¹¹	X ¹²	I ¹³	X ¹⁴	X ¹⁵	I ¹⁶	
I	G	A	I	G	A	I	G	A	I	G	A	I	G	A	I	

I	G	C	I	G	C	I	G	C	I	G	C	I	G	C	I
I	C	A	I	C	A	I	C	A	I	C	A	I	C	A	I

	I	A	T	I	A	T	I	A	T	I	A	T	I	A	T	I
	I	G	G	I	G	G	I	G	G	I	G	G	I	G	G	I
	I	G	T	I	G	T	I	G	T	I	G	T	I	G	T	I
	I	C	C	I	C	C	I	C	C	I	C	C	I	C	C	I
5	I	T	T	I	T	T	I	T	T	I	T	T	I	T	T	I
	I	A	C	I	A	C	I	A	C	I	A	C	I	A	C	I
	I	A	T	I	A	T	I	A	T	I	A	T	I	A	T	I
	I	T	C	I	T	C	I	T	C	I	T	C	I	T	C	I
	I	T	G	I	T	G	I	T	G	I	T	G	I	T	G	I
10	I	C	G	I	C	G	I	C	G	I	C	G	I	C	G	I
	I	T	A	I	T	A	I	T	A	I	T	A	I	T	A	I

The affinity of the probes may be further enhanced by the inclusion of additional intosines, (or 4,-way, 3-way, or 2-way wobbles, or other generic bases) to the 3' and 5' ends of the oligonucleotide probes. These codon usage biased probes can be used in conjunction with a ligase discrimination to further increase obtainable sequence information. Thus, for example, where the hybridization to an array comprising the above-described 16 mers also includes a ligation with one or more ligatable oligonucleotides of fixed length N, whose sequence is known, each successful ligation provides 16 + N nucleotides of sequence information.

ii) Expression monitoring arrays.

In a preferred embodiment, oligonucleotide probes in the expression monitoring high density array are selected to bind specifically to the nucleic acid target to which they are directed with minimal non-specific binding or cross-hybridization under the particular hybridization conditions utilized. Because the high density arrays of this invention can contain in excess of 1,000,000 elements, thus, for example, the high density array can contain every possible 20 mer sequence complementary to an Hc-2 mRNA.

There, may exist, however, 20 mer subsequences that are not unique to the IL-2 mRNA. Probes directed to these subsequences are expected to cross hybridize with occurrences of their complementary sequence in other regions of the sample genome. Similarly, other probes simply may not hybridize effectively under the hybridization conditions (*e.g.*, due to secondary structure, or interactions with the substrate or other probes). Thus, in a preferred embodiment, the probes that show such poor specificity or hybridization efficiency are identified and may not be included either in the high density array itself (*e.g.*, during fabrication of the array) or in the post-hybridization data analysis.

In addition, in a preferred embodiment, expression monitoring arrays are used to identify the presence and expression (transcription) level of genes which are several hundred base pairs long or longer. For most applications it would be useful to identify the presence, absence, or expression level of several thousand to one hundred thousand genes. Because the number of oligonucleotides per array is limited, in a preferred embodiment, it is desired to include only a limited set of probes specific to each gene whose expression is to be detected.

a) Hybridization and cross-hybridization data.

Thus, in one embodiment, this invention provides for a method of optimizing a probe set for detection of a particular gene. Generally, this method involves providing a high density array containing a multiplicity of probes of one or more particular length(s) that are complementary to subsequences of the mRNA transcribed by the target gene. In one embodiment the high density array may contain every probe of a particular length that is complementary to a particular mRNA. The probes of the high density array are then hybridized with their target nucleic acid alone and then hybridized with a high complexity, high concentration nucleic acid sample that does not contain the targets complementary to the probes. Thus, for example, where the target nucleic acid is an RNA, the probes are first hybridized with their target nucleic acid alone and then hybridized with

the high complexity sample (to ensure that the high complexity sample does not contain targets for the probes). Those probes that show a strong hybridization signal with their target and little or no cross-hybridization with the

high complexity sample are preferred probes for use in the high density arrays of this invention.

The high density array may additionally contain mismatch controls for each of the probes to be tested. In a preferred embodiment, the mismatch controls contain a central mismatch. Where both the mismatch control and the target probe show high levels of hybridization (e.g., the hybridization to the mismatch is nearly equal to or greater than the hybridization to the corresponding test probe), the test probe is preferably not used in the high density array.

In a particularly preferred embodiment, optimal probes are selected according to the following method: First, as indicated above, an array is provided containing a multiplicity of oligonucleotide probes complementary to subsequences of the target nucleic acid. The oligonucleotide probes may be of a single length or may span a variety of lengths. The high density array may contain every probe of a particular length that is complementary to a particular mRNA or may contain probes selected from various regions of particular mRNAs. For each target-specific probe the array also contains a mismatch control probe; preferably a central mismatch control probe.

The oligonucleotide array is hybridized to a sample containing target nucleic acids having subsequences complementary to the oligonucleotide probes and the difference in hybridization intensity between each probe and its mismatch control is determined. Only those probes where the difference between the probe and its mismatch control exceeds a threshold hybridization intensity (e.g. preferably greater than 10% of the background signal intensity, more preferably greater than 20% of the background signal intensity and most preferably greater than 50% of the background signal intensity) are selected. Thus, only probes that show a strong signal compared to their mismatch control are selected.

The probe optimization procedure can optionally include a second round of selection. In this selection, the oligonucleotide probe array is hybridized with a nucleic

sample containing target nucleic acids. Alternatively, a sample containing a sample complementary antisense RNA is provided. Of course, other samples could be provided such as samples

from organisms or cell lines known to be lacking a particular gene, or known for not expressing a particular gene.

Only those probes where both the probe and its mismatch control show hybridization intensities below a threshold value (*e.g.* less than about 5 times the background signal intensity, preferably equal to or less than about 2 times the background signal intensity, more preferably equal to or less than about 1 times the background signal intensity, and most preferably equal or less than about half background signal intensity) are selected. In this way probes that show minimal non-specific binding are selected. Finally, in a preferred embodiment, the *n* probes (where *n* is the number of probes desired for each target gene) that pass both selection criteria and have the highest hybridization intensity for each target gene are selected for incorporation into the array, or where already present in the array, for subsequent data analysis. Of course, one of skill in the art, will appreciate that either selection criterion could be used alone for selection of probes.

b) Heuristic rules.

Using the hybridization and cross-hybridization data obtained as described above, graphs can be made of hybridization and cross-hybridization intensities versus various probe properties *e.g.* number of As, number of Cs in a window of 8 bases, palindromic strength, *etc.* The graphs can then be examined for correlations between those properties and the hybridization or cross-hybridization intensities. Thresholds can be set beyond which it looks like hybridization is always poor or cross hybridization is always very strong. If any probe fails one of the criteria, it is rejected from the set of probes and therefore, not placed on the chip. This will be called the heuristic rules method.

One set of rules developed for 20 mer probes in this manner is the following:

Hybridization rules:

1) Number of As is less than 9

2) Maximum run of 1s, 2s, 3s, 4s, 5s, 6s, 7s, 8s is less than 4

3) Maximum run of 1s, 2s, 3s, 4s, 5s is less than 4 bases in a row

4) Maximum run of any 2 bases is less than 11 bases.

5) Palindrome score is less than 6.

- 6) Clumping score is less than 6.
- 7) Number of As + Number of Ts is less than 14
- 8) Number of As + number of Gs is less than 15

With respect to rule number 4, requiring the maximum run of any two bases to be less than 11 bases guarantees that at least three different bases occur within any 12 consecutive nucleotides. A palindrome score is the maximum number of complementary bases if the oligonucleotide is folded over at a point that maximizes self complementarity. Thus, for example a 20 mer that is perfectly self-complementary would have a palindrome score of 10. A clumping score is the maximum number of three-mers of identical bases in a given sequence. Thus, for example, a run of 5 identical bases will produce a clumping score of 3 (bases 1-3, bases 2-4, and bases 3-5).

If any probe failed one of these criteria (1-8), the probe was not a member of the subset of probes placed on the chip. For example, if a hypothetical probe was 5'-AGCTTTTTTCATGCATCTAT-3' the probe would not be synthesized on the chip because it has a run of four or more bases (*i.e.*, run of six).

The cross hybridization rules developed for 20 mers were as follows:

- 1) Number of Cs is less than 8;
- 2) Number of Cs in any window of 8 bases is less than 4.

Thus, if any probe failed any of either the hybridization rules (1-8) or the cross-hybridization rules (1-2), the probe was not a member of the subset of probes placed on the chip. These rules eliminated many of the probes that cross hybridized strongly or exhibited low hybridization, and performed moderate job of eliminating weakly hybridizing probes.

These heuristic rules may be implemented by hand calculations, or alternatively, they may be implemented in software as is discussed below in Section XII.

c) Neural net.

The neural net is a statistical device that takes as input the sequence of the probe or other probe properties. The neural net can then be used to pick an arbitrary number of the "best" probes. One such neural net was developed for selecting 20-mer probes. This

neural net was produced a moderate (0.7) correlation between predicted intensity and measured intensity, with a better model for cross hybridization than hybridization. Details of this neural net are provided in Example 6.

5

d) ANOVA Model

An analysis of variance (ANOVA) model may be built to model the intensities based on positions of consecutive base pairs. This is based on the theory that the melting energy is based on stacking energies of consecutive bases. The annova model was used to find correlation between the a probe sequence and the hybridization and cross-hybridization intensities. The inputs were probe sequences broken down into consecutive base pairs. One model was made to predict hybridization, another was made to predict cross hybridization. The output was the hybridization or crosshybridization intensity.

There were 304 ($19 * 16$) possible inputs, consisting of the 14 possible two base combinations, and the 19 positions that those combinations could be found in. For example, the sequence aggctga... has "ag" in the first position, "gg" in the second position, "gc" in the third, "ct" in the fourth and so on.

The resulting model assigned a component of the output intensity to each of the possible inputs, so to estimate the intensity for a given sequence one simply adds the intensities for each of it's 19 components.

20

e) Pruning (removal) of similar probes.

One of the causes of poor signals in expression chips is that genes other than the ones being monitored have sequences which are very similar to parts of the sequences which are being monitored. The easiest way to solve this is to remove probes which are similar to more than one gene. Thus, in a preferred embodiment, it is desirable to remove (prune) probes that hybridize to transcription products of more than one gene.

The simplest pruning method is to line up a proposed probe with all the probes in the database and calculate the dot product of the probe with each probe in the database. The probe with the highest dot product is the best match. This method is known as the dot product method. The dot product method is the simplest method, but it is also the most computationally intensive method. The dot product method is used in the following example:

30

```
probe from gene 1:   aagcgcgacatcatgatctc  
                    |||||  
gene 2               cgttttgggttgagggaataaacatttc
```


probe from gene 1: aagcgcgatcgattatgctc
5 |||||
gene 2: atctcggatcgatcggataagcgcgatcgattatgctccgccga

In another variant, where an organism has many different genes which are very similar, it is difficult to make a probe set that measures the concentration only one of those very similar genes. One can then prune out any probes which are dissimilar, and make the probe set a probe set for that family of genes.

The cost of producing masks for a chip is approximately linearly related to the number of synthesis cycles. In a normal set of genes the distribution of the number of cycles any probe takes to build approximates a Gaussian distribution. Because of this the mask cost can normally be reduced by 15% by throwing out about 3 percent of the probes. In a preferred embodiment, synthesis cycle pruning simply involves eliminating (not including) those probes those probes that require a greater number of synthesis cycles than the maximum number of synthesis cycles selected for preparation of the particular subject high density oligonucleotide array. Since the typical synthesis of probes follows a regular pattern of bases put down (acgtacgtacgt...) counting the number of synthesis steps needed to build a probe is easy. The listing shown in Table 1 provides typical code for counting the number of synthesis cycles a probe will need.

```

enum {
    PROPS = 1,
    ...
};

static char base[] = "acgt";
static char a b c d e f g h i j k l m n o p q r s t u v w x y z

```

```

static short index[] = { 0, 0, 1, 0, 0, 0, 2, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 3, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0 };

short lookupIndex( char aBase ){
    if( isupper( aBase ) || !isalpha( aBase ) ){
5         errorHwnd( "illegal base");
        return -1;
    }
    if( strchr( base, aBase ) == NULL ){
        errorHwnd( "non-dna base");
10        return 0;
    }
    return index[ aBase - 'a' ];
}

15 static short calculateMinNumberOfSynthesisStepsForComplement( char local * buffer ){
    short i, last, current, cycles = 1;
    char buffer1[40];
    for( i = 3D 0; buffer[i] != 0; i++ ){
        switch( tolower( buffer[i] ) ){
20            case 'a': buffer1[i] = 't'; break;
            case 'c': buffer1[i] = 'g'; break;
            case 'g': buffer1[i] = 'c'; break;
            case 't': buffer1[i] = 'a'; break;
        }
25    }
    buffer1[i] = 0;
    if( buffer1[0] == 0 ) return 0;
    last = lookupIndex( buffer1[0] );
    for( i = 1; buffer1[i] != 0; i++ ){
30        current = lookupIndex( buffer1[i] );
        if( current <= last ) cycles++;
        last = current;
    }
    return (short)((cycles - 1) * 4 + current + 1);
35 }

```

g) Combination of selection methods.

The heuristic rules, neural net and annova model are all different.

Each method has its own advantages.

Methods do not necessarily produce the same results, or produce entirely independent results, it may be advantageous to combine the methods. For example, probes may be pruned or reduced if more than one method (e.g., two out of three) indicate the probe will

not likely produce good results. Then, synthesis cycle pruning may be performed to reduce costs.

Fig. 11 shows the flow of a process of increasing the number of probes for monitoring the expression of genes after the number of probes has been reduced or pruned.

5 In one embodiment, a user is able to specify the number of nucleic acid probes that should be placed on the chip to monitor the expression of each gene. As discussed above, it is advantageous to reduce probes that will not likely produce good results; however, the number of probes may be reduced to substantially less than the desired number of probes.

At step 402, the number of probes for monitoring multiple genes is reduced
10 by the heuristic rules method, neural net, annova model, synthesis cycle pruning, or any other method, or combination of methods. A gene is selected at step 404.

A determination is made whether the remaining probes for monitoring the selected gene number greater than 80% (which may be varied or user defined) of the desired number of probes. If yes, the computer system proceeds to the next gene at step
15 408 which will generally return to step 404.

If the remaining probes for monitoring the selected gene do not number greater than 80% of the desired number of probes, a determination is made whether the remaining probes for monitoring the selected gene number greater than 40% (which may be varied or user defined) of the desired number of probes. If yes, an "i" is appended to the
20 end of the gene name to indicate that after pruning, the probes were incomplete at step 412.

At step 414, the number of probes is increased by loosening the constraints that rejected probes. For example, the thresholds in the heuristic rules may be increased by 1. Therefore, if previously probes were rejected if they had four As in a row, the rule may be loosened to five As in a row.

25 A determination is then made whether the remaining probes for monitoring the selected gene number greater than 80% of the desired number of probes at step 416. If yes, an "r" is appended to the end of the gene name at step 412 to indicate that the rule

check is made to see if the probes for monitoring the selected
30 gene only conflict with one or two other genes. If yes, the full set of probes

complementary to the gene (or target sequence) are taken and pruned so that the probes remaining are exactly complementary to the selected gene exclusively at step 422.

A determination is then made whether the remaining probes for monitoring the selected gene number greater than 80% of the desired number of probes at step 424. If
5 yes, an "s" is appended to the end of the gene name at step 426 to indicate that the only a few genes were similar to the selected gene.

At step 428, the probes for monitoring the selected gene are not reduced by conflicts at all. A determination is then made whether the remaining probes for monitoring the selected gene number greater than 80% of the desired number of probes at step 430. If
10 yes, an "f" is appended to the end of the gene name at step 432 to indicate that the probes include the whole family of probes perfectly complementary to the gene.

If there are still not 80% of the desired number of probes, an error is reported at step 434. Any number of error handling procedures may be undertaken. For example, an error message may be generated for the user and the probes for the gene may
15 not be stored. Alternatively, the user may be prompted to enter a new desired number of probes.

V. Synthesis of High Density Arrays

Methods of forming high density arrays of oligonucleotides, peptides and
20 other polymer sequences with a minimal number of synthetic steps are known. The oligonucleotide analogue array can be synthesized on a solid substrate by a variety of methods, including, but not limited to, light-directed chemical coupling, and mechanically directed coupling. See Pirrung *et al.*, U.S. Patent No. 5,143,854 (see also PCT Application No. WO 90/15070) and Fodor *et al.*, PCT Publication Nos. WO 92/10092 and WO
25 93/09668 which disclose methods of forming vast arrays of peptides, oligonucleotides and other molecules using, for example, light-directed synthesis techniques. See also, Fodor *et*

heterogenous array of polymers is converted, through simultaneous coupling at a number
30 of reaction sites, into a different heterogenous array. See, U.S. Application Serial Nos. 07/796,243 and 07/980,523

The development of VLSIPS™ technology as described in the above-noted U.S. Patent No. 5,143,854 and PCT patent publication Nos. WO 90/15070 and 92/10092, is considered pioneering technology in the fields of combinatorial synthesis and screening of combinatorial libraries. More recently, patent application Serial No. 08/082,937, filed
5 June 25, 1993 describes methods for making arrays of oligonucleotide probes that can be used to check or determine a partial or complete sequence of a target nucleic acid and to detect the presence of a nucleic acid containing a specific oligonucleotide sequence.

In brief, the light-directed combinatorial synthesis of oligonucleotide arrays on a glass surface proceeds using automated phosphoramidite chemistry and chip masking
10 techniques. In one specific implementation, a glass surface is derivatized with a silane reagent containing a functional group, *e.g.*, a hydroxyl or amine group blocked by a photolabile protecting group. Photolysis through a photolithographic mask is used selectively to expose functional groups which are then ready to react with incoming
5'-photoprotected nucleoside phosphoramidites. The phosphoramidites react only with
15 those sites which are illuminated (and thus exposed by removal of the photolabile blocking group). Thus, the phosphoramidites only add to those areas selectively exposed from the preceding step. These steps are repeated until the desired array of sequences have been synthesized on the solid surface. Combinatorial synthesis of different oligonucleotide analogues at different locations on the array is determined by the pattern of illumination
20 during synthesis and the order of addition of coupling reagents.

In the event that an oligonucleotide analogue with a polyamide backbone is used in the VLSIPS™ procedure, it is generally inappropriate to use phosphoramidite chemistry to perform the synthetic steps, since the monomers do not attach to one another via a phosphate linkage. Instead, peptide synthetic methods are substituted. See, *e.g.*,
25 Pirrung *et al.* U.S. Pat. No. 5,143,854.

Peptide nucleic acids are commercially available from, *e.g.*, Biosearch, Inc. (Bedford, MA) which comprise a polyamide backbone and the bases found in naturally

50
disclosure.

In addition to the foregoing, additional methods which can be used to generate an array of oligonucleotides on a single substrate are described in co-pending Applications Ser. No. 07/980,523, filed November 20, 1992, and 07/796,243, filed November 22, 1991 and in PCT Publication No. WO 93/09668. In the methods disclosed
5 in these applications, reagents are delivered to the substrate by either (1) flowing within a channel defined on predefined regions or (2) "spotting" on predefined regions. However, other approaches, as well as combinations of spotting and flowing, may be employed. In each instance, certain activated regions of the substrate are mechanically separated from other regions when the monomer solutions are delivered to the various reaction sites.

10 A typical "flow channel" method applied to the compounds and libraries of the present invention can generally be described as follows. Diverse polymer sequences are synthesized at selected regions of a substrate or solid support by forming flow channels on a surface of the substrate through which appropriate reagents flow or in which appropriate reagents are placed. For example, assume a monomer "A" is to be bound to
15 the substrate in a first group of selected regions. If necessary, all or part of the surface of the substrate in all or a part of the selected regions is activated for binding by, for example, flowing appropriate reagents through all or some of the channels, or by washing the entire substrate with appropriate reagents. After placement of a channel block on the surface of the substrate, a reagent having the monomer A flows through or is placed in all or some of
20 the channel(s). The channels provide fluid contact to the first selected regions, thereby binding the monomer A on the substrate directly or indirectly (via a spacer) in the first selected regions.

Thereafter, a monomer B is coupled to second selected regions, some of which may be included among the first selected regions. The second selected regions will
25 be in fluid contact with a second flow channel(s) through translation, rotation, or replacement of the channel block on the surface of the substrate; through opening or closing a selected valve; or through deposition of a layer of chemical reagent. The reagent is then flowed through or placed in the second flow channel(s), binding monomer B at the second selected locations. In this particular example, the resulting sequences bound
30 to the substrate at this stage of processing will be, for example, A, B, and AB. The process

is repeated to form a vast array of sequences of desired length at known locations on the substrate.

After the substrate is activated, monomer A can be flowed through some of the channels, monomer B can be flowed through other channels, a monomer C can be
5 flowed through still other channels, *etc.* In this manner, many or all of the reaction regions are reacted with a monomer before the channel block must be moved or the substrate must be washed and/or reactivated. By making use of many or all of the available reaction regions simultaneously, the number of washing and activation steps can be minimized.

One of skill in the art will recognize that there are alternative methods of
10 forming channels or otherwise protecting a portion of the surface of the substrate. For example, according to some embodiments, a protective coating such as a hydrophilic or hydrophobic coating (depending upon the nature of the solvent) is utilized over portions of the substrate to be protected, sometimes in combination with materials that facilitate wetting by the reactant solution in other regions. In this manner, the flowing solutions are
15 further prevented from passing outside of their designated flow paths.

According to other embodiments the channels will be formed by depositing an electron or photoresist such as those used extensively in the semiconductor industry. Such materials include polymethyl methacrylate (PMMA) and its derivatives, and electron beam resists such as poly(olefin sulfones) and the like (more fully described in Chapter 10
20 of Ghandi, *VLSI Fabrication Principles*, Wiley (1983)). According to these embodiments, a resist is deposited, selectively exposed, and etched, leaving a portion of the substrate exposed for coupling. These steps of depositing resist, selectively removing resist and monomer coupling are repeated to form polymers of desired sequence at desired locations.

The "spotting" methods of preparing compounds and libraries of the present
25 invention can be implemented in much the same manner as the flow channel methods. For example, a monomer A, or a coupled, or dimer, or trimer, or tetramer, *etc.*, or a fully synthesized material, can be delivered to and coupled with a first group of reaction regions which have been appropriately

activated. In some embodiments, the reactants are delivered to the flow channel
embodiments described above, reactants are delivered by directly depositing (rather than flowing) relatively small quantities of them in selected regions. In some steps, of course,

the entire substrate surface can be sprayed or otherwise coated with a solution. In preferred embodiments, a dispenser moves from region to region, depositing only as much monomer as necessary at each stop. Typical dispensers include a micropipette to deliver the monomer solution to the substrate and a robotic system to control the position of the micropipette with respect to the substrate. In other embodiments, the dispenser includes a series of tubes, a manifold, an array of pipettes, or the like so that various reagents can be delivered to the reaction regions simultaneously.

VI. Hybridization.

Nucleic acid hybridization simply involves providing a denatured probe and target nucleic acid under conditions where the probe and its complementary target can form stable hybrid duplexes through complementary base pairing. The nucleic acids that do not form hybrid duplexes are then washed away leaving the hybridized nucleic acids to be detected, typically through detection of an attached detectable label. It is generally recognized that nucleic acids are denatured by increasing the temperature or decreasing the salt concentration of the buffer containing the nucleic acids, or in the addition of chemical agents, or the raising of the pH. Under low stringency conditions (*e.g.*, low temperature and/or high salt and/or high target concentration) hybrid duplexes (*e.g.*, DNA:DNA, RNA:RNA, or RNA:DNA) will form even where the annealed sequences are not perfectly complementary. Thus specificity of hybridization is reduced at lower stringency. Conversely, at higher stringency (*e.g.*, higher temperature or lower salt) successful hybridization requires fewer mismatches.

One of skill in the art will appreciate that hybridization conditions may be selected to provide any degree of stringency. In a preferred embodiment, hybridization is performed at low stringency in this case in 6X SSPE-T at about 40°C to about 50°C (0.005% Triton X-100) to ensure hybridization and then subsequent washes are performed at higher stringency (*e.g.*, 1X SSPE-T at 37°C) to eliminate non-specific hybridization.

Stringency can be increased by increasing the temperature of the hybridization and/or washes as well as by decreasing the salt concentration until a desired level of hybridization specificity is obtained. Stringency can also be increased by addition of agents such as formamide. Hybridization specificity may be evaluated by comparison of hybridization to the test

probes with hybridization to the various controls that can be present (*e.g.*, expression level control, normalization control, mismatch controls, *etc.*).

In general, there is a tradeoff between hybridization specificity (stringency) and signal intensity. Thus, in a preferred embodiment, the wash is performed at the highest stringency that produces consistent results and that provides a signal intensity greater than approximately 10% of the background intensity. Thus, in a preferred embodiment, the hybridized array may be washed at successively higher stringency solutions and read between each wash. Analysis of the data sets thus produced will reveal a wash stringency above which the hybridization pattern is not appreciably altered and which provides adequate signal for the particular oligonucleotide probes of interest.

In a preferred embodiment, background signal is reduced by the use of a detergent (*e.g.*, C-TAB) or a blocking reagent (*e.g.*, sperm DNA, cot-1 DNA, *etc.*) during the hybridization to reduce non-specific binding. In a particularly preferred embodiment, the hybridization is performed in the presence of about 0.1 to about 0.5 mg/ml DNA (*e.g.*, herring sperm DNA). The use of blocking agents in hybridization is well known to those of skill in the art (*see, e.g.*, Chapter 8 in P. Tijssen, *supra.*)

The stability of duplexes formed between RNAs or DNAs are generally in the order of RNA:RNA > RNA:DNA > DNA:DNA, in solution. Long probes have better duplex stability with a target, but poorer mismatch discrimination than shorter probes (mismatch discrimination refers to the measured hybridization signal ratio between a perfect match probe and a single base mismatch probe). Shorter probes (*e.g.*, 8-mers) discriminate mismatches very well, but the overall duplex stability is low.

Altering the thermal stability (T_m) of the duplex formed between the target and the probe using, *e.g.*, known oligonucleotide analogues allows for optimization of duplex stability and mismatch discrimination. One useful aspect of altering the T_m arises from the fact that adenine-thymine (A-T) duplexes have a lower T_m than guanine-cytosine (G-C) duplexes, due in part to the fact that the A-T duplexes have 2 hydrogen bonds per base pair, while the G-C duplexes have 3 hydrogen bonds per base pair. Thus, it is generally possible to optimize hybridization for each oligonucleotide probe simultaneously. Thus, in some embodiments, it is desirable to selectively destabilize G-C

duplexes and/or to increase the stability of A-T duplexes. This can be accomplished, e.g., by substituting guanine residues in the probes of an array which form G-C duplexes with hypoxanthine, or by substituting adenine residues in probes which form A-T duplexes with 2,6 diaminopurine or by using the salt tetramethyl ammonium chloride (TMACl or other
5 alhylated ammonium salts) in place of NaCl.

Altered duplex stability conferred by using oligonucleotide analogue probes can be ascertained by following, e.g., fluorescence signal intensity of oligonucleotide analogue arrays hybridized with a target oligonucleotide over time. The data allow optimization of specific hybridization conditions at, e.g., room temperature (for simplified
10 diagnostic applications in the future).

Another way of verifying altered duplex stability is by following the signal intensity generated upon hybridization with time. Previous experiments using DNA targets and DNA chips have shown that signal intensity increases with time, and that the more stable duplexes generate higher signal intensities faster than less stable duplexes. The
15 signals reach a plateau or "saturate" after a certain amount of time due to all of the binding sites becoming occupied. These data allow for optimization of hybridization, and determination of the best conditions at a specified temperature.

Methods of optimizing hybridization conditions are well known to those of skill in the art (see, e.g., *Laboratory Techniques in Biochemistry and Molecular Biology*,
20 *Vol. 24: Hybridization With Nucleic Acid Probes*, P. Tijssen, ed. Elsevier, N.Y., (1993)).

VII. Detection Methods

Methods for detection depend upon the label selected and are known to those of skill in the art. Thus, for example, where a colorimetric label is used, simple
25 visualization of the label is sufficient. Where a radioactive labeled probe is used, detection of the radiation (e.g with photographic film or a solid state detector) is sufficient.

As explained above, the use of a fluorescent label is preferred. The use of a fluorescent label allows for the detection of interactions between a target sequence and a reagent at specific positions where interactions between a target sequence and a reagent take place. For
30 example, if a target sequence is labeled and exposed to an array of different oligonucleotide probes, only those locations where the oligonucleotides interact with the

target (sample nucleic acid(s)) will exhibit significant signal. In addition to using a label, other methods may be used to scan the matrix to determine where interaction takes place. The spectrum of interactions can, of course, be determined in a temporal manner by repeated scans of interactions which occur at each of a multiplicity of conditions.

- 5 However, instead of testing each individual interaction separately, a multiplicity of sequence interactions may be simultaneously determined on a matrix.

B. Scanning System

In a preferred embodiment, the hybridized array is excited with a light
10 source at the excitation wavelength of the particular fluorescent label and the resulting fluorescence at the emission wavelength is detected. In a particularly preferred embodiment, the excitation light source is a laser appropriate for the excitation of the fluorescent label.

Detection of the fluorescence signal preferably utilizes a confocal
15 microscope, more preferably a confocal microscope automated with a computer-controlled stage to automatically scan the entire high density array. The microscope may be equipped with a phototransducer (*e.g.*, a photomultiplier, a solid state array, a ccd camera, *etc.*) attached to an automated data acquisition system to automatically record the fluorescence signal produced by hybridization to each oligonucleotide probe on the array. Such
20 automated systems are described at length in U.S. Patent No: 5,143,854, PCT Application 20 92/10092, and copending U.S.S.N. 08/195,889 filed on February 10, 1994. Use of laser illumination in conjunction with automated confocal microscopy for signal detection permits detection at a resolution of better than about 100 μm , more preferably better than about 50 μm , and most preferably better than about 25 μm .

25 With the automated detection apparatus, the correlation of specific positional labeling is converted to the presence on the target of sequences for which the oligonucleotides have specificity of interaction. Thus, the positional information is
transcribed into a digital format, and the sequences which have interacted
between the substrate matrix and the target molecule can be directly listed from the positional information. A preferred detection system is described in PCT publication no.

WO90/15070; and U.S.S.N. 07/624,120. Although the detection described therein is a fluorescence detector, the detector can be replaced by a spectroscopic or other detector. The scanning system can make use of a moving detector relative to a fixed substrate, a fixed detector with a moving substrate, or a combination. Alternatively, mirrors or other
5 apparatus can be used to transfer the signal directly to the detector. *See, e.g.*, U.S.S.N. 07/624,120.

The detection method will typically also incorporate some signal processing to determine whether the signal at a particular matrix position is a true positive or may be a spurious signal. For example, a signal from a region which has actual positive signal may
10 tend to spread over and provide a positive signal in an adjacent region which actually should not have one. This may occur, *e.g.*, where the scanning system is not properly discriminating with sufficiently high resolution in its pixel density to separate the two regions. Thus, the signal over the spatial region may be evaluated pixel by pixel to determine the locations and the actual extent of positive signal. A true positive signal
15 should, in theory, show a uniform signal at each pixel location. Thus, processing by plotting number of pixels with actual signal intensity should have a clearly uniform signal intensity. Regions where the signal intensities show a fairly wide dispersion, may be particularly suspect and the scanning system may be programmed to more carefully scan those positions.

20 More sophisticated signal processing techniques can be applied to the initial determination of whether a positive signal exists or not. *See, e.g.*, U.S.S.N. 07/624,120 and discussion below in Section XII.

VIII. Ligation-Enhanced Signal Detection.

A) General Ligation Reaction.

25 Ligation reactions can be used to discriminate between fully complementary hybrids and those that differ by one or more base pairs, particularly for probe oligonucleotides. Ligation reactions for signal detection increases the stability of the hybrid duplex, improves hybridization
30 specificity (particularly for shorter probe oligonucleotides *e.g.* 5 to 12 mers), and optionally, provides additional sequence information.

Various components for use of ligation reaction(s) in combination with generic difference arrays are illustrated in Figure 13a. In its simplest embodiment, the probe oligonucleotide/ligation reaction system includes an array of oligonucleotide probes. As discussed above, the oligonucleotide probes can be randomly selected, haphazardly selected, composition biased, inclusive of all possible oligonucleotides of a particular length, and so forth. The oligonucleotide probes can optionally include a predetermined "constant" region (*see* Fig. 13a) which has substantially the same sequence for substantially all of the probe oligonucleotides on the array.

Where the probe comprises a constant region it also preferably comprises a "variable region" (*see* Fig. 13a) which can be randomly selected, haphazardly selected, composition biased, inclusive of all possible oligonucleotides of a particular length, and so forth. When constant and variable regions are present, a sample nucleic acid that hybridizes to the oligonucleotide probe typically hybridizes to at least the variable region and optionally to the constant region as well.

The probe oligonucleotide/ligation reaction system also optionally includes a nucleic acid that is complementary to the constant region. This complement may be a subsequence of a sample nucleic acid or a separate oligonucleotide. When the complement to the constant region is a separate oligonucleotide, hybridization to the constant region provides a ligation site (*see* Fig. 13a, ligation site A). The hybridized complement to the constant region can optionally be permanently crosslinked to the constant region by the use of cross-linking reagents (*e.g.*, psoralens). The sample nucleic acid, and/or the ligatable oligonucleotide can optionally be labeled. Where both are labeled, the labels can be the same or distinguishable.

The probe oligonucleotide/ligation reaction system optionally includes a ligatable oligonucleotide that can be ligated to free terminus of the variable region (*see* Fig. 13a, ligation site B). The ligatable oligonucleotide can be a single oligonucleotide of known nucleotide sequence, a collection of nucleic acids of known sequence, or a pool of

Alternatively, the probe oligonucleotide/ligation reaction system can be combined in a variety of ways to increase the stability of the hybrid duplex, and/or improve hybridization specificity (particularly for shorter probe oligonucleotides

e.g., 5 to 12 mers), and/or provides sequence information. Various uses of the probe oligonucleotide/ligation reaction system are described in detail below.

While Figure 13a illustrates ligation components in solid phase, similar approaches and components can be used in solution phase. It will be appreciated that the order of the constant region and variable region can be altered. In addition, a probe oligonucleotide may comprise multiple constant regions and/or multiple variable regions. In addition, while Fig. 13a illustrates the probe oligonucleotide attached to a solid support by a 3' terminus, the probe can also be reversed and attached via the 5' terminus.

It will be appreciated that sequences or subsequences of the probe oligonucleotide where variable regions are present or absent can act as a primer site for initiation of polymerization using the remainder of the probe oligonucleotide and/or the ligation oligonucleotide and/or the sample nucleic acid as a polymerization template.

B) Ligation Reactions to Discriminate Mismatches at Probe Termini, Target Termini, or Both Termini.

In one embodiment, a simple ligation reaction discriminated mismatches at or near the terminus of the probe oligonucleotide (see Fig. 13b). Typically, the nucleic acid fragments comprising the sample nucleic acid are longer than the probe oligonucleotides in the array. So that, when hybridized, the target nucleic acid typically has an overhang. When the array comprises probe oligonucleotides attached through their 3' termini, the hybridized target (sample) nucleic acid provides a 3' overhang. In this embodiment, the target nucleic acid is not necessarily labelled (see, e.g., Fig. 13b).

When the array of oligonucleotides is combined with the target nucleic acid to form target-oligonucleotide hybrid complexes, the target-oligonucleotide hybrid complexes are contacted with a ligase and a labelled, ligatable oligonucleotide or, alternatively, with a pool of labelled, ligatable probes. While the hybridization of the sample nucleic acids and the ligatable probes can be performed sequentially, the sample nucleic acids and the ligatable oligonucleotide, and ligase are all added together. The pool may comprise particular preselected probes or may be a collection of all possible probes of a particular length (e.g., 3 mer up to 12 mer) (see, e.g., Fig. 13b).

The ligation reaction of the labelled, ligatable probes to the phosphorylated 5' end of the oligonucleotide probes on the substrate will occur, in the presence of the ligase, predominantly when the target:oligonucleotide hybrid has formed with correct base-pairing near the 5' end of the oligonucleotide probe and where there is a suitable 3' overhang of the target nucleic acid to serve as a template for hybridization and ligation (see Fig.12). After the ligation reaction, the substrate is washed (multiple times if necessary) under conditions suitable to remove the target nucleic acid and the labeled, unligated probes (e.g., above 40°C to 50°C, or under otherwise highly stringent conditions).

Thereafter, a fluorescence image (e.g., a quantitative fluorescent image) of the hybridization pattern is obtained as described above in Section VII(B). Labeled oligonucleotide probes, i.e., the oligonucleotide probes which are complementary to the target nucleic acid, are identified. The presence, absence, and/or intensity of the hybridization signal provides information regarding the presence and level of the nucleic acid sequence or subsequence in the nucleic acid sample as described above.

Any enzyme that catalyzes the formation of a phosphodiester bond at the site of a single-stranded break in duplex DNA can be used to enhance discrimination between fully complementary hybrids and those that differ by one or more base pairs. Such ligases include, but are not limited to, T4 DNA ligase, ligases isolated from *E. coli* and ligases isolated from other bacteria and bacteriophages. The concentration of the ligase will vary depending on the particular ligase used, the concentration of target and buffer conditions, but will typically range from about 50 units/ml to about 5,000 units/ml. Moreover, the time in which the array of target:oligonucleotide hybridization complexes is in contact with the ligase will vary. Typically, the ligase treatment is carried out for a period of time ranging from minutes to hours. Methods of performing ligase discrimination can be found in copending USSN 08/533,582, filed on October 18, 1995 and in Jackson *et al.* (1996) *Nature Biotechnology*, 14: 1685-1691.

It will be appreciated that the method described above primarily

discriminates mismatches adjacent to the 3' terminus of the target (sample) nucleic acid (see Fig. 13b).

In another embodiment, a ligation can be used to discriminate mismatches at, or near, the end of the sample nucleic acid (Fig. 13c). In this instance, the probe oligonucleotides comprise a constant region and a variable region (*e.g.*, the variable regions can include all possible 8 mers as illustrated in Fig. 13c). A constant
5 oligonucleotide (complementary to the constant region or a subsequence thereof) is hybridized to the constant region and cross-linked (*e.g.*, covalently bound) at that location. The remainder of the probe oligonucleotide (*e.g.*, the variable region or subsequences thereof and optionally a subsequence of the constant region) forms a 5' overhang to which
10 the nucleic acid sample can hybridize. Where there are no mismatches at or near the terminus of the sample oligonucleotide, a ligation event then joins the sample oligonucleotide to the constant oligonucleotide. Free nucleic acids are washed away leaving bound hybridized sample oligonucleotides which can then be detected.

In still another embodiment, a double ligation (illustrated in Fig. 13d) can be used to discriminate mismatches at or near the ends of both the probe oligonucleotide
15 and the target nucleic acid. In this approach, the probe oligonucleotides each comprise a constant region and a variable region as described above in VIII(A). The surface bound oligonucleotide probes are hybridized to a constant oligonucleotide having a sequence which is complementary to the constant region of the oligonucleotide probes. The sample (target) nucleic acids are contacted to the hybrid duplex in the presence of a ligase. Where
20 there is no terminal mismatch between the sample nucleic acid and the variable region, the ligation is successful resulting in the ligation of the constant oligonucleotide to the sample nucleic acid (*see* "first ligation" in Fig. 13d). This ligation thus discriminates mismatches at the terminus of the sample nucleic acid.

The hybridized duplex is contacted with a pool of labeled ligatable
25 oligonucleotides. Where a ligatable probe is complementary to the overhang produced by the hybridized sample nucleic acid and there are no mismatches at or near the free terminus of the variable region of the probe oligonucleotide a second ligation will attach the labeled
30 oligonucleotide to the constant oligonucleotide. It will be appreciated that the various hybridization and ligation reactions may be carried out sequentially or simultaneously, and in a preferred embodiment are carried out simultaneously.

As with the previously described method, any enzyme that catalyzes the formation of a phosphodiester bond at the site of a single-strand break in duplex DNA can be used to enhance discrimination between fully complementary hybrids and those that differ by one or more base pairs. Such ligases include, but are not limited to, T4 DNA
5 ligase, ligases isolated from *E. coli* and ligases isolated from other bacteria or bacteriophages. The concentration of the ligase will vary depending on the particular ligase used, the concentration of target and buffer conditions, but will typically range from about 50 units/ml to about 5,000 units/ml. Moreover, the time in which the array of target oligonucleotide:oligonucleotide probe hybrid complexes is in contact with the ligase will
10 vary. Typically, the ligase treatment is carried out for a period of time ranging from minutes to hours. In addition, it will be readily apparent to those of skill that the two ligation reactions can either be done sequentially or, alternatively, simultaneously in a single reaction mix that contains: target oligonucleotides; constant oligonucleotides; a pool of labeled, ligatable probes; and a ligase.

15 In this dual ligation method, the first ligation reaction generally occurs only if the 5' end of the target oligonucleotide (*i.e.*, the last 3-4 bases) matches the variable region of the oligonucleotide probe. Similarly, the second ligation reaction, which adds a label to the probe, generally occurs efficiently only if the first ligation reaction was successful and if the ligated target is complementary to the 5' end of the probe. Thus, this
20 method provides for specificity at both ends of the variable region. Moreover, this method is advantageous in that it allows a shorter variable probe region to be used; increases probe:target specificity and removes the necessity of labeling the target. Dual ligation methods of this sort are described in detail in copending USSN 08/533,582, filed on October 18, 1995.

25 In another embodiment, after hybridization of the nucleotide complementary to the constant region of the probe oligonucleotides, the hybrid duplex formed thereby can be permanently cross-linked so as to prevent subsequent denaturation

In this embodiment, the use of a ligatable oligonucleotide is optional. The sample nucleic acid may itself be labeled thereby permitting detection of the ligated sample nucleic acids.

Methods for cross-linking nucleic acids are well known to those of skill in the art. Such methods include, but are not limited to, baking, exposure to UV, exposure to ionizing radiation, and contact with chemical cross-linking reagents. In a particularly preferred embodiment, cross-linking is accomplished by the formation of covalent bonds with chemical cross-linking reagents. Preferred cross-linking reagents include bifunctional cross-linking reagents and cross-linking is accomplished by chemical or photoactivation of the cross-linking reagent with the nucleic acids. The reagents may be applied after formation hybrid duplexes, but in a preferred embodiment, the cross-linker is initially attached to either the probe or complementary (to the constant region) nucleic acids before hybridization.

The cross-linking reagent can be any bifunctional molecule which covalently cross-links the tester nucleic acid to a hybridized driver nucleic acid. Generally the cross-linking agent will be a bifunctional photoreagent which will be monoadducted to the tester or driver nucleic acids leaving a second photochemically reactive residue which can bind covalently to the corresponding hybridized nucleic acid upon photoexcitation. The cross-linking molecule may also be a mixed chemical and photochemical bifunctional reagent which will be non-photochemically bound to the probe or tester nucleic acids via a chemical reaction such as alkylation, condensation, or addition, followed by photochemical binding to the corresponding hybridized nucleic acid. Bifunctional chemical cross-linking molecules activated either catalytically or by high temperature following hybridization may also be employed.

Examples of bifunctional photoreagents include furocoumarins, benzodipyrones, and bis azides such as bis-azido ethidium bromide. Examples of mixed bifunctional reagents with both chemical and photochemical binding moieties include haloalkyl-furocoumarins, haloalkyl benzodipyrones, haloalkyl-courmarins and various azido nucleoside triphosphates.

Other suitable cross-linkers include cis-benzodipyrene and trans-benzodipyrene. The cross-linker known commercially as Sorlon is also suitable. For a detailed description of the cross-linking of hybridized nucleic acids see WO 85/02628.

The foregoing enhancement discrimination methods involving the use of ligation reactions can be used in all instances where improved discrimination between fully complementary hybrids and those that differ by one or more base pairs would be helpful. More particularly, such methods can be used to more accurately determine the sequence (e.g., *de novo* sequencing), monitor expression, monitor mutations, or resequence the target nucleic acid (i.e., such methods can be used in conjunction with a second sequencing procedure to provide independent verification). The foregoing is intended to illustrate, and not restrict, the way in which an array of target:oligonucleotide hybrid complexes can be treated with a ligase and a pool of labeled, ligatable probes to improve hybridization signals on high density oligonucleotide arrays.

B) Ligation Reaction to Add Sequence Information.

i) Extended sequence information from simple ligation.

The ligation reactions described above can also be used to increase the sequence information obtained regarding the hybridized nucleic acid. It will be appreciated that the nucleotide sequence of each probe oligonucleotide on the high density oligonucleotide array is known. Specific hybridization to a sample nucleic acid indicates that the hybridized sample nucleic acid has a sequence or subsequence complementary to the hybridized probe oligonucleotide. Thus a hybridization event provides sequence information that can be used to identify the nucleic acids (e.g., gene transcripts) present in the hybridized sample. Generally speaking, the sequence information obtained is governed by the length of the probe oligonucleotide. Thus, where the probe oligonucleotide is an 8 mer, 8 nucleotides of sequence information is obtained.

However, the ligation discrimination reactions described above can be used to provide additional sequence information. In this embodiment, rather than every possible ligatable oligonucleotide of a given length, the array and sample nucleic acids are hybridized to predetermined ligatable oligonucleotides in which the nucleotides at one or more positions are labeled. If a hybridized sample nucleic acid has nucleotide(s) complementary to the ligatable oligonucleotide in addition to the probe oligonucleotide,

Thus, for example, where the probe oligonucleotide is an 8 mer and specific 6 mer ligatable probes are used, the resulting hybridization will provide 14 nucleotides worth of sequence information.

Where different ligatable oligonucleotides are used in this context, it is desirable to distinguish between the various ligated oligonucleotides. This can be accomplished by sequential ligations with each different species of ligatable probe followed by reading of the array. Alternatively, each species of ligatable oligonucleotide can be labeled with a different detection label allowing simultaneous ligation and subsequent detection of the various different labels.

ii) Use of a generic ligation GeneChip for interrogating sequences adjacent to restriction sites in a complex (target) sample nucleic acid.

The generic difference arrays can be used to fingerprint complex DNA clones or to monitor the complex pattern of gene expression from a given source. In fingerprinting a nucleic acid sequence (e.g. an 8 bp sequence) adjacent to a given restriction enzyme site is sequenced.

In fingerprinting, a restriction enzyme is used which cleaves the target at a frequency dependent on the length of the recognition sequence. The restriction digest thus generate nucleic acid fragments approximately uniformly distributed along the genomic DNA. For instance, a 4-cutter like Hsp92 II would cut a target about once every several hundred basepairs, whereas a 6-cutter, like SacI would cut a target about once every several thousand (4,000) basepairs. With restriction enzyme fragments, the individual fragments are typically non-overlapping and average several thousand basepairs in length. For the purposes of fingerprinting, with a 6-cutter restriction enzyme it is possible to examine (2000-3000 fragments X 4000 bases/fragment = 8-12 million basepairs per target. This indicates that it is possible to routinely sort an 8-12 million basepair target in a high density array to measure expression differences or to monitor gene expression (see e.g.

the above discussion of the use of restriction enzymes to generate fragments of the sample nucleic acid). The fingerprinting methods thus provide means to subsample a nucleic acid population in a

roughly uniform and reproducible manner and determine expression profiles and/or abundance differences for target nucleic acid thus subsampled.

In general, the method involves providing a high density generic difference screening array where the probe oligonucleotides comprise a constant region and a variable region as described above. In this instance, however, the last few bases of the constant region (anchor sequence) are selected to complement the 5' end of the restriction recognition site (*see, e.g.*, Figs. 14a and 14b) and the complementary anchor sequence is shortened by the appropriate number of bases. The variable region can be randomly selected, haphazardly selected, composition biased as described above. However, in a preferred embodiment, the variable region include all possible nucleic acids of a particular length (*e.g.*, all possible 3 mers, all possible 4 mers . . . all possible 12 mers), more preferably all possible 8 mers.

The sample nucleic acids are prepared by fragmentation using a restriction enzyme. Preferred restriction enzymes leaving only 0, 1, or 2 bases at the 5' end provide a greater specificity of ligation (*i.e.*, *SacI* leaves just a 5' C and *Hsp92 II* leaves no recognition site bases at the 5' end). However, restriction enzymes leaving more bases at the 5' end can be used. Several restriction enzymes can be used simultaneously if they all leave the same recognition base at the 5' end. For instance, *Aat II*, *SacI*, *SphI*, *HhaI*, *Bsp1286I*, *ApaI*, *Kpn I*, *Ban II*, all leave just a C at the 5' end making these compatible enzymes. Restriction enzymes and their characteristic recognition/cleavage sites are well known to those of skill in the art (*see, e.g.*, CloneTech catalogue, Clontech Laboratories Inc. Palo Alto, Ca).

The digested target is then hybridized and ligated to the high density array, preferably in the presence of a complement to the constant region, using standard conditions (*e.g.*, 30°C, o/n, 800 U T4 ligase, T4 ligase buffer). The hybridization in effect sorts (locates and/or localizes) the sample nucleic acids the position of the sample nucleic acids being determined by the sequence of the bases adjacent to the restriction site at the 5'

The same procedure can be performed on two or more sample nucleic acids for generic difference screening.

In a preferred embodiment, one of two formats are used. In Format I, the ligated fragment (*e.g.* the sample nucleic acid and, optionally, the complement to the constant region) is locked into place in the high density array by its attachment (*e.g.*, by cross-linking) to the complement (*e.g.*, by the use of a psoralen). The complementary strand to the fragment can be denatured and washed off of the array with a dilute base (*e.g.*, 1 N NaOH). These cross-linked fragments can then be used as probes in a second round of hybridization to one or more nucleic acid samples. Differential nucleic acid abundances (*e.g.*, differential gene expression) can then be monitored by comparing the hybridization pattern between different nucleic acids hybridized simultaneously or sequentially to the same array or separate arrays.

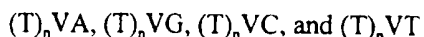
In a second format (format II), particularly where the sample nucleic acid is a deoxynucleic acid sample, the DNA is restriction digested as described above, and then directly hybridized/ligated to the generic difference array. Sites where intensity differences occur indicate a difference in nucleic acid abundance. The differentially abundant (*e.g.*, differentially expressed) nucleic acid can be cloned by designing primers specific to that nucleic acid based upon the sequence information derived from the location of the probe in the array and the sequence of the recognition site. For an 8 mer (variable region) and a 6 base restriction enzyme, this gives a 14 mer primer sequence. For short genomes, a 14 mer primer may be used to isolate the clone. Longer genomes become more tractable as the length of the primary probes (variable region) increases beyond 8 mers.

The restriction enzyme digested sample nucleic acid is preferably labeled and ligated to the high density array in fingerprinting method and in format II (see discussion above and Fig. 14d). In the case of format I assays the ligated target sequence is preferably not labeled and instead, serves as a hybridization probe in a second round of hybridization of labeled sample nucleic acids to the high density array.

To insure that sites which have not been cleaved by the given restriction enzymes do not ligate to the high density array, alkaline phosphatase can be used to remove

iii) Analysis of differential display fragments on a generic difference array.

The principle behind differential display is to generate a set of randomly primed amplification (*e.g.*, PCR) fragments from a first strand cDNA population transcribed from RNA using anchor primers of the form:



- 5 in which V is A, G, or C, and n ranges from about 6 to about 30, preferably from about 8 to about 20 and more preferably about 10 to about 16 with n=14 being most preferred. Depending on what random primer and anchoring primer and anchoring primer is chosen, different sets of cDNA transcripts are represented in a particular nucleic acid fragment set. These amplification fragments are analyzed by sorting the fragments on a generic screening
10 oligonucleotide array where they hybridize based on the sequence at the 5' end of the fragment.

- The method is illustrated in Figures 16a through 16e. First strand cDNA is synthesized by reverse transcription of poly(A) mRNA using an anchored poly(t) primer according to standard methods (Fig. 16a). The first strand DNA acts as a template for
15 amplification (*e.g.*, via PCR) using upstream primers comprising an engineered restriction site and one or more degenerate bases (N=A,C,G,T) at the 3' end. Randomly primed PCR is then performed using the upstream primers the anchor primers and a random primer (*e.g.*, anchor primers $(T)_{14}VA$, $(T)_{14}VG$, $(T)_{14}VC$, $(T)_{14}VT$ and random primer *e.g.*, SacI site: 5'-CATGAGCTC(N)). The resulting amplification fragments are then digested with a
20 restriction endonuclease corresponding to the engineered restriction sites. The resulting sample nucleic acids are then hybridized to a generic difference screening array as described above.

- The method is preferably performed to two or more nucleic acid samples thereby allowing use of the generic difference screening methods of this invention. In one
25 embodiment, the probe oligonucleotides comprise a constant region complementary to the remaining restriction site on the sample nucleic acids if present. The remaining analysis proceeds as described above.

As an example, the method is also provided on a differentially abundant nucleic acid. For example where the cleavage is with Sac I, providing a 9 base tail (CATGAGCTC) the array can comprise probe oligonucleotides

having a complementary 9 base constant region and variable regions comprising all possible 9 mers. This provides 17 nucleotides of sequence information for each hybridization (9 mer constant + 8 mer variable).

5 *iv) Use of ligation to extract additional sequence information from restriction selected nucleic acid hybridizations.*

Ligation reactions can also be used in combination with restriction digests to subsample the sample nucleic acids at approximately uniform intervals and simultaneously provide additional sequence information using a ligation reaction. In this
10 embodiment, a high density array is provided in which the probe oligonucleotides comprise a nucleic acid sequence complementary to the sense or antisense strand of a restriction site (see, e.g., Fig. 14). The sample nucleic acids are digested randomly with a DNase or specifically with a restriction endonuclease (e.g., Sau 3A). The digested oligonucleotides are then hybridized to the high density array. Only those nucleic acids having termini
15 complementary to the constant regions will bind to the probe oligonucleotides. Thus, the restriction fragments will be preferentially selected.

The array is also hybridized with a pool of ligatable oligonucleotides comprising all possible oligonucleotides of a particular length (e.g., a 6 mer) in the presence of a ligase thereby ligating the complementary ligatable oligonucleotides to the
20 terminus of the probe oligonucleotide. This produces probe oligonucleotides increased in length by the length of the ligatable oligonucleotide and complementary to nucleic acids known to be present in the nucleic acid sample.

The DNA is then stripped off of the array and the elongated probes are used to perform generic difference screening of the nucleic acid samples as described above.
25 When probes corresponding to nucleic acid differentially expressed in the various samples are identified, the known probe sequence can be used to identify the nucleic acids that are differentially expressed in the samples.

30 A nucleic acid is amplified using a constant region plus the known variable region and an additional nucleotide (A, G, C, or T) on one end. The genomic clone is then digested with a second restriction enzyme and ligated to an adaptor sequence. Using the 4 primer

oligonucleotides and the adapter sequence as primers the genomic sequence of interest can be amplified (*e.g.*, using PCR) from the genomic clones. The PCR amplified sequence can then be used to probe (*e.g.*, in a Southern blot) the cDNA library to obtain the whole cDNA of interest.

5 For example, in one embodiment, a 10 mer high density array is designed so that it comprises all possible combination of 10 mer oligonucleotides (*i.e.*, $4^{10}=1048576$ nucleic acids) and, at the beginning of each oligonucleotide, a constant sequence (*e.g.*, 3'-TAGT-5'), the first 4 bases of which are complementary to the recognition sequence of a restriction enzyme (*e.g.*, Sau 3A plus one base T).

10 Complete digestion of a large genomic clone or a simplified cDNA library (*e.g.*, a cDNA library that only includes parts of the 5' end or 3' end of whole mRNA) with, for example, a 4 cutter enzyme (illustrated herein by Sau 3A) generates DNA fragments with a 5' overhang sequence (for Sau 3A, the overhang is GATC). The recognition site exists at approximately every 500 bp.

15 When the DNA fragments are hybridized with the 10 mer chip in the presence of all possible combinations of a ligatable oligonucleotide of a particular length (*e.g.*, a 6 mer) and a T4 DNA ligase, the ligatable oligonucleotide is ligated onto the probe oligonucleotide.

20 The DNA is then stripped off the the chip and generic difference screening is performed as described above. This permits identification of probe oligonucleotides that hybridize to nucleic acids that are present at different levels in the tested samples.

25 Based on the 14 bp sequence in this example (5 mer constant region bases plus 10 mers) from the probes of interest in the array, four 16 base primers are produced by adding one base (A, G, C, or T) at the end. Using these primers and adaptor sequences as primers, the genomic sequence of interest can be amplified. The amplified sequence can then be used to probe a cDNA library to obtain the whole cDNA of interest as described above.

Signal Evaluation

30 A) *Signal Evaluation for expression monitoring.*

One of skill in the art will appreciate that methods for evaluating the hybridization results vary with the nature of the specific probe nucleic acids used as well as the controls provided. In the simplest embodiment, simple quantification of the fluorescence intensity for each probe is determined. This is accomplished simply by measuring probe signal strength at each location (representing a different probe) on the high density array (*e.g.*, where the label is a fluorescent label, detection of the amount of fluorescence (intensity) produced by a fixed excitation illumination at each location on the array). Comparison of the absolute intensities of an array hybridized to nucleic acids from a "test" sample with intensities produced by a "control" sample provides a measure of the relative abundance of the nucleic acids that hybridize to each of the probes.

One of skill in the art, however, will appreciate that hybridization signals will vary in strength with efficiency of hybridization, the amount of label on the sample nucleic acid and the amount of the particular nucleic acid in the sample. Typically nucleic acids present at very low levels (*e.g.*, $< 1\text{pM}$) will show a very weak signal. At some low level of concentration, the signal becomes virtually indistinguishable from background. In evaluating the hybridization data, a threshold intensity value may be selected below which a signal is not counted as being essentially indistinguishable from background.

Where it is desirable to detect nucleic acids expressed at lower levels, a lower threshold is chosen. Conversely, where only high expression levels are to be evaluated a higher threshold level is selected. In a preferred embodiment, a suitable threshold is about 10% above that of the average background signal.

In addition, the provision of appropriate controls permits a more detailed analysis that controls for variations in hybridization conditions, cell health, non-specific binding and the like. Thus, for example, in a preferred embodiment, the hybridization array is provided with normalization controls as described above in Section IV(A)(2). These normalization controls are probes complementary to control sequences added in a known concentration to the sample. Where the overall hybridization conditions are poor, the normalization controls will provide a higher signal reflecting the improved hybridization. Normalization of the signal derived from other probes in the array to the normalization controls thus provides a control

for variations in array synthesis or in hybridization conditions. Typically, normalization is accomplished by dividing the measured signal from the other probes in the array by the average signal produced by the normalization controls. Normalization may also include correction for variations due to sample preparation and amplification. Such normalization
5 may be accomplished by dividing the measured signal by the average signal from the sample preparation/amplification control probes (e.g., the *BioB* probes). The resulting values may be multiplied by a constant value to scale the results.

As indicated above, the high density array can include mismatch controls or, in the case of generic difference screening arrays, pairs of related oligonucleotide probes
10 differing in one or more preselected nucleotides. In preferred expression monitoring arrays, there is a mismatch control having a central mismatch for every probe (except the normalization controls) in the array. It is expected that after washing in stringent conditions, where a perfect match would be expected to hybridize to the probe, but not to the mismatch, the signal from the mismatch controls should primarily reflect non-specific
15 binding or the presence in the sample of a nucleic acid that hybridizes with the mismatch. In expression monitoring analyses, where both the probe in question and its corresponding mismatch control both show high signals, or the mismatch shows a higher signal than its corresponding test probe, the signal from those probes is preferably ignored. The difference in hybridization signal intensity between the target specific probe and its
20 corresponding mismatch control is a measure of the discrimination of the target-specific probe. Thus, in a preferred embodiment, the signal of the mismatch probe is subtracted from the signal from its corresponding test probe to provide a measure of the signal due to specific binding of the test probe. Similar, as discussed below, in generic difference screening, the difference between probe pairs is calculated.

25 The concentration of a particular sequence can then be determined by measuring the signal intensity of each of the probes that bind specifically to that nucleic acid and normalizing to the normalization controls. Where the signal from the probes is
30
35
40
45
50
55
60
65
70
75
80
85
90
95
100
105
110
115
120
125
130
135
140
145
150
155
160
165
170
175
180
185
190
195
200
205
210
215
220
225
230
235
240
245
250
255
260
265
270
275
280
285
290
295
300
305
310
315
320
325
330
335
340
345
350
355
360
365
370
375
380
385
390
395
400
405
410
415
420
425
430
435
440
445
450
455
460
465
470
475
480
485
490
495
500
505
510
515
520
525
530
535
540
545
550
555
560
565
570
575
580
585
590
595
600
605
610
615
620
625
630
635
640
645
650
655
660
665
670
675
680
685
690
695
700
705
710
715
720
725
730
735
740
745
750
755
760
765
770
775
780
785
790
795
800
805
810
815
820
825
830
835
840
845
850
855
860
865
870
875
880
885
890
895
900
905
910
915
920
925
930
935
940
945
950
955
960
965
970
975
980
985
990
995
1000
1005
1010
1015
1020
1025
1030
1035
1040
1045
1050
1055
1060
1065
1070
1075
1080
1085
1090
1095
1100
1105
1110
1115
1120
1125
1130
1135
1140
1145
1150
1155
1160
1165
1170
1175
1180
1185
1190
1195
1200
1205
1210
1215
1220
1225
1230
1235
1240
1245
1250
1255
1260
1265
1270
1275
1280
1285
1290
1295
1300
1305
1310
1315
1320
1325
1330
1335
1340
1345
1350
1355
1360
1365
1370
1375
1380
1385
1390
1395
1400
1405
1410
1415
1420
1425
1430
1435
1440
1445
1450
1455
1460
1465
1470
1475
1480
1485
1490
1495
1500
1505
1510
1515
1520
1525
1530
1535
1540
1545
1550
1555
1560
1565
1570
1575
1580
1585
1590
1595
1600
1605
1610
1615
1620
1625
1630
1635
1640
1645
1650
1655
1660
1665
1670
1675
1680
1685
1690
1695
1700
1705
1710
1715
1720
1725
1730
1735
1740
1745
1750
1755
1760
1765
1770
1775
1780
1785
1790
1795
1800
1805
1810
1815
1820
1825
1830
1835
1840
1845
1850
1855
1860
1865
1870
1875
1880
1885
1890
1895
1900
1905
1910
1915
1920
1925
1930
1935
1940
1945
1950
1955
1960
1965
1970
1975
1980
1985
1990
1995
2000
2005
2010
2015
2020
2025
2030
2035
2040
2045
2050
2055
2060
2065
2070
2075
2080
2085
2090
2095
2100
2105
2110
2115
2120
2125
2130
2135
2140
2145
2150
2155
2160
2165
2170
2175
2180
2185
2190
2195
2200
2205
2210
2215
2220
2225
2230
2235
2240
2245
2250
2255
2260
2265
2270
2275
2280
2285
2290
2295
2300
2305
2310
2315
2320
2325
2330
2335
2340
2345
2350
2355
2360
2365
2370
2375
2380
2385
2390
2395
2400
2405
2410
2415
2420
2425
2430
2435
2440
2445
2450
2455
2460
2465
2470
2475
2480
2485
2490
2495
2500
2505
2510
2515
2520
2525
2530
2535
2540
2545
2550
2555
2560
2565
2570
2575
2580
2585
2590
2595
2600
2605
2610
2615
2620
2625
2630
2635
2640
2645
2650
2655
2660
2665
2670
2675
2680
2685
2690
2695
2700
2705
2710
2715
2720
2725
2730
2735
2740
2745
2750
2755
2760
2765
2770
2775
2780
2785
2790
2795
2800
2805
2810
2815
2820
2825
2830
2835
2840
2845
2850
2855
2860
2865
2870
2875
2880
2885
2890
2895
2900
2905
2910
2915
2920
2925
2930
2935
2940
2945
2950
2955
2960
2965
2970
2975
2980
2985
2990
2995
3000
3005
3010
3015
3020
3025
3030
3035
3040
3045
3050
3055
3060
3065
3070
3075
3080
3085
3090
3095
3100
3105
3110
3115
3120
3125
3130
3135
3140
3145
3150
3155
3160
3165
3170
3175
3180
3185
3190
3195
3200
3205
3210
3215
3220
3225
3230
3235
3240
3245
3250
3255
3260
3265
3270
3275
3280
3285
3290
3295
3300
3305
3310
3315
3320
3325
3330
3335
3340
3345
3350
3355
3360
3365
3370
3375
3380
3385
3390
3395
3400
3405
3410
3415
3420
3425
3430
3435
3440
3445
3450
3455
3460
3465
3470
3475
3480
3485
3490
3495
3500
3505
3510
3515
3520
3525
3530
3535
3540
3545
3550
3555
3560
3565
3570
3575
3580
3585
3590
3595
3600
3605
3610
3615
3620
3625
3630
3635
3640
3645
3650
3655
3660
3665
3670
3675
3680
3685
3690
3695
3700
3705
3710
3715
3720
3725
3730
3735
3740
3745
3750
3755
3760
3765
3770
3775
3780
3785
3790
3795
3800
3805
3810
3815
3820
3825
3830
3835
3840
3845
3850
3855
3860
3865
3870
3875
3880
3885
3890
3895
3900
3905
3910
3915
3920
3925
3930
3935
3940
3945
3950
3955
3960
3965
3970
3975
3980
3985
3990
3995
4000
4005
4010
4015
4020
4025
4030
4035
4040
4045
4050
4055
4060
4065
4070
4075
4080
4085
4090
4095
4100
4105
4110
4115
4120
4125
4130
4135
4140
4145
4150
4155
4160
4165
4170
4175
4180
4185
4190
4195
4200
4205
4210
4215
4220
4225
4230
4235
4240
4245
4250
4255
4260
4265
4270
4275
4280
4285
4290
4295
4300
4305
4310
4315
4320
4325
4330
4335
4340
4345
4350
4355
4360
4365
4370
4375
4380
4385
4390
4395
4400
4405
4410
4415
4420
4425
4430
4435
4440
4445
4450
4455
4460
4465
4470
4475
4480
4485
4490
4495
4500
4505
4510
4515
4520
4525
4530
4535
4540
4545
4550
4555
4560
4565
4570
4575
4580
4585
4590
4595
4600
4605
4610
4615
4620
4625
4630
4635
4640
4645
4650
4655
4660
4665
4670
4675
4680
4685
4690
4695
4700
4705
4710
4715
4720
4725
4730
4735
4740
4745
4750
4755
4760
4765
4770
4775
4780
4785
4790
4795
4800
4805
4810
4815
4820
4825
4830
4835
4840
4845
4850
4855
4860
4865
4870
4875
4880
4885
4890
4895
4900
4905
4910
4915
4920
4925
4930
4935
4940
4945
4950
4955
4960
4965
4970
4975
4980
4985
4990
4995
5000
5005
5010
5015
5020
5025
5030
5035
5040
5045
5050
5055
5060
5065
5070
5075
5080
5085
5090
5095
5100
5105
5110
5115
5120
5125
5130
5135
5140
5145
5150
5155
5160
5165
5170
5175
5180
5185
5190
5195
5200
5205
5210
5215
5220
5225
5230
5235
5240
5245
5250
5255
5260
5265
5270
5275
5280
5285
5290
5295
5300
5305
5310
5315
5320
5325
5330
5335
5340
5345
5350
5355
5360
5365
5370
5375
5380
5385
5390
5395
5400
5405
5410
5415
5420
5425
5430
5435
5440
5445
5450
5455
5460
5465
5470
5475
5480
5485
5490
5495
5500
5505
5510
5515
5520
5525
5530
5535
5540
5545
5550
5555
5560
5565
5570
5575
5580
5585
5590
5595
5600
5605
5610
5615
5620
5625
5630
5635
5640
5645
5650
5655
5660
5665
5670
5675
5680
5685
5690
5695
5700
5705
5710
5715
5720
5725
5730
5735
5740
5745
5750
5755
5760
5765
5770
5775
5780
5785
5790
5795
5800
5805
5810
5815
5820
5825
5830
5835
5840
5845
5850
5855
5860
5865
5870
5875
5880
5885
5890
5895
5900
5905
5910
5915
5920
5925
5930
5935
5940
5945
5950
5955
5960
5965
5970
5975
5980
5985
5990
5995
6000
6005
6010
6015
6020
6025
6030
6035
6040
6045
6050
6055
6060
6065
6070
6075
6080
6085
6090
6095
6100
6105
6110
6115
6120
6125
6130
6135
6140
6145
6150
6155
6160
6165
6170
6175
6180
6185
6190
6195
6200
6205
6210
6215
6220
6225
6230
6235
6240
6245
6250
6255
6260
6265
6270
6275
6280
6285
6290
6295
6300
6305
6310
6315
6320
6325
6330
6335
6340
6345
6350
6355
6360
6365
6370
6375
6380
6385
6390
6395
6400
6405
6410
6415
6420
6425
6430
6435
6440
6445
6450
6455
6460
6465
6470
6475
6480
6485
6490
6495
6500
6505
6510
6515
6520
6525
6530
6535
6540
6545
6550
6555
6560
6565
6570
6575
6580
6585
6590
6595
6600
6605
6610
6615
6620
6625
6630
6635
6640
6645
6650
6655
6660
6665
6670
6675
6680
6685
6690
6695
6700
6705
6710
6715
6720
6725
6730
6735
6740
6745
6750
6755
6760
6765
6770
6775
6780
6785
6790
6795
6800
6805
6810
6815
6820
6825
6830
6835
6840
6845
6850
6855
6860
6865
6870
6875
6880
6885
6890
6895
6900
6905
6910
6915
6920
6925
6930
6935
6940
6945
6950
6955
6960
6965
6970
6975
6980
6985
6990
6995
7000
7005
7010
7015
7020
7025
7030
7035
7040
7045
7050
7055
7060
7065
7070
7075
7080
7085
7090
7095
7100
7105
7110
7115
7120
7125
7130
7135
7140
7145
7150
7155
7160
7165
7170
7175
7180
7185
7190
7195
7200
7205
7210
7215
7220
7225
7230
7235
7240
7245
7250
7255
7260
7265
7270
7275
7280
7285
7290
7295
7300
7305
7310
7315
7320
7325
7330
7335
7340
7345
7350
7355
7360
7365
7370
7375
7380
7385
7390
7395
7400
7405
7410
7415
7420
7425
7430
7435
7440
7445
7450
7455
7460
7465
7470
7475
7480
7485
7490
7495
7500
7505
7510
7515
7520
7525
7530
7535
7540
7545
7550
7555
7560
7565
7570
7575
7580
7585
7590
7595
7600
7605
7610
7615
7620
7625
7630
7635
7640
7645
7650
7655
7660
7665
7670
7675
7680
7685
7690
7695
7700
7705
7710
7715
7720
7725
7730
7735
7740
7745
7750
7755
7760
7765
7770
7775
7780
7785
7790
7795
7800
7805
7810
7815
7820
7825
7830
7835
7840
7845
7850
7855
7860
7865
7870
7875
7880
7885
7890
7895
7900
7905
7910
7915
7920
7925
7930
7935
7940
7945
7950
7955
7960
7965
7970
7975
7980
7985
7990
7995
8000
8005
8010
8015
8020
8025
8030
8035
8040
8045
8050
8055
8060
8065
8070
8075
8080
8085
8090
8095
8100
8105
8110
8115
8120
8125
8130
8135
8140
8145
8150
8155
8160
8165
8170
8175
8180
8185
8190
8195
8200
8205
8210
8215
8220
8225
8230
8235
8240
8245
8250
8255
8260
8265
8270
8275
8280
8285
8290
8295
8300
8305
8310
8315
8320
8325
8330
8335
8340
8345
8350
8355
8360
8365
8370
8375
8380
8385
8390
8395
8400
8405
8410
8415
8420
8425
8430
8435
8440
8445
8450
8455
8460
8465
8470
8475
8480
8485
8490
8495
8500
8505
8510
8515
8520
8525
8530
8535
8540
8545
8550
8555
8560
8565
8570
8575
8580
8585
8590
8595
8600
8605
8610
8615
8620
8625
8630
8635
8640
8645
8650
8655
8660
8665
8670
8675
8680
8685
8690
8695
8700
8705
8710
8715
8720
8725
8730
8735
8740
8745
8750
8755
8760
8765
8770
8775
8780
8785
8790
8795
8800
8805
8810
8815
8820
8825
8830
8835
8840
8845
8850
8855
8860
8865
8870
8875
8880
8885
8890
8895
8900
8905
8910
8915
8920
8925
8930
8935
8940
8945
8950
8955
8960
8965
8970
8975
8980
8985
8990
8995
9000
9005
9010
9015
9020
9025
9030
9035
9040
9045
9050
9055
9060
9065
9070
9075
9080
9085
9090
9095
9100
9105
9110
9115
9120
9125
9130
9135
9140
9145
9150
9155
9160
9165
9170
9175
9180
9185
9190
9195
9200
9205
9210
9215
9220
9225
9230
9235
9240
9245
9250
9255
9260
9265
9270
9275
9280
9285
9290
9295
9300
9305
9310
9315
9320
9325
9330
9335
9340
9345
9350
9355
9360
9365
9370
9375
9380
9385
9390
9395
9400
9405
9410
9415
9420
9425
9430
9435
9440
9445
9450
9455
9460
9465
9470
9475
9480
9485
9490
9495
9500
9505
9510
9515
9520
9525
9530
9535
9540
9545
9550
9555
9560
9565
9570
9575
9580
9585
9590
9595
9600
9605
9610
9615
9620
9625
9630
9635
9640
9645
9650
9655
9660
9665
9670
9675
9680
9685
9690
9695
9700
9705
9710
9715
9720
9725
9730
9735
9740
9745
9750
9755
9760
9765
9770
9775
9780
9785
9790
9795
9800
9805
9810
9815
9820
9825
9830
9835
9840
9845
9850
9855
9860
9865
9870
9875
9880
9885
9890
9895
9900
9905
9910
9915
9920
9925
9930
9935
9940
9945
9950
9955
9960
9965
9970
9975
9980
9985
999

above a selected threshold value), or a combination of both metrics (e.g., a weighted average).

It is a surprising discovery of this invention, that normalization controls are often unnecessary for useful quantification of a hybridization signal. Thus, where optimal probes have been identified in the two step selection process as described above, in Section IV(B)(ii)(a), the average hybridization signal produced by the selected optimal probes provides a good quantified measure of the concentration of hybridized nucleic acid.

B) Signal evaluation for generic difference screening.

Signal evaluation for generic difference screening is performed in essentially the same manner as expression monitoring described above. However, data is evaluated on a probe-by-probe basis rather than a gene by gene basis.

In a preferred embodiment, for each probe oligonucleotide the signal intensity difference between the members of each probe pair (K) is calculated as:

$$X_{ijk1} - X_{ijk2}$$

where X is the hybridization intensity of the probe, i indicates which sample (in this case sample 1 or 2), and j indicates which replicate for each sample (in the case of Example 7 where there were two replicates for each nucleic acid sample, j is 1 or 2), K is the probe pair ID number (in the case of Example 7, 1...34,320), and 1 indicates one member of the probe pair, while 2 indicates the other member of the probe pair.

The differences between the signal intensity difference for each probe pair between the replicates for each sample is then calculated. Thus, for example, the differences between replicate 1 and 2 of sample 1 (e.g., a normal the normal cell line) and between replicate 1 and replicate 2 of sample 2 (e.g., a tumor cell line) for each probe is calculated as

$$(X_{11k1} - X_{11k2}) - (X_{12k1} - X_{12k2})$$

the replicates can be normalized to each other as

$$\begin{aligned} & (X_{11k1} - X_{11k2}) / (X_{12k1} - X_{12k2}) \text{ for sample 1 or} \\ & (X_{21k1} - X_{21k2}) - (X_{22k1} - X_{22k2}) \text{ for sample 2} \end{aligned}$$

for all probe pairs (*i.e.*, after normalization, the average ratio should approximate 1).

Finally, the the differences between sample 1 and 2 averaged over the two replicates is calculated. This value is calculated as

$$((X_{21k1} + X_{22k2}) / 2) - ((X_{11k1} + X_{12k2}) / 2)$$

5 after normalization between the two samples based on the average ratio of

$$[(X_{21k1} + X_{22k2}) / 2] / [(X_{11k1} + X_{12k2}) / 2] .$$

This data is plotted as a function of probe number (ID) and probes having differentially hybridized nucleic acids are readily discernable (*see, e.g.*, Fig. 16c).

However, the data may also be filtered to reduce background signal. In this
10 instance, after normalization between replicates (see above), the ratio is calculated as follows: If the absolute value of $(X_{11k1} - X_{11k2}) / (X_{12k1} - X_{12k2}) > 1$, then the ratio = $(X_{11k1} - X_{11k2}) / (X_{12k1} - X_{12k2})$ else the ratio = $(X_{12k1} - X_{12k2}) / (X_{11k1} - X_{11k2})$ (the inverse).

The ratio of replicate 1 and 2 of sample 2 for the difference of each oligonucleotide pair, is calculated in the same way, but based on the absolute value of

$$15 \quad (X_{21k1} - X_{21k2}) / (X_{22k1} - X_{22k2}) \quad \text{and} \\ (X_{22k1} - X_{22k2}) / (X_{21k1} - X_{21k2}) .$$

Finally, as above, the ratio of sample 1 and sample 2 averaged over two replicates for the difference of each oligonucleotide pairs calculated as in Fig. 17a, but based on the absolute value of

$$20 \quad [(X_{21k1} + X_{22k2}) / 2] / [(X_{11k1} + X_{12k2}) / 2] \quad \text{and} \\ [(X_{11k1} + X_{12k2}) / 2] / [(X_{21k1} + X_{22k2}) / 2]$$

after normalization as described above.

The oligonucleotide pairs that show the greatest differential hybridization between the two samples can be identified by sorting the observed hybridization ratio and
25 difference values. The oligonucleotides that show the largest change (increase or decrease) can be readily seen from the ratio plot (*see, e.g.* Fig. 17c).

IDENTIFICATION OF HIGHLY EXPRESSED GENES

As indicated above, the nucleic acid sequences of the probe
30 oligonucleotides comprising the high density arrays are known. The sequences of the probes showing the largest hybridization difference (and hence, the largest differential

be used to identify the differentially expressed genes in the compared samples by any of a number of means.

Thus, for example, sequences of the differentially hybridizing probes may be used to search a nucleic acid database (*e.g.*, by a BLAST, or related search of the fragments against all known sequences). Alternatively, some sequence reconstruction using the families of probes that change by similar amounts can also be done. The database search for known genes that include sequences complementary (or nearly complementary) to the probes that change the most is not difficult and because it is generally easier than sequence reconstruction is the preferred method for identifying the differentially expressed sequences.

In another embodiment, the differential hybridization pattern indicates that there are significant differences in the overall expression profile(s) between the tested samples, and identifies probes that are specific for the differences. These probes can be used as specific affinity reagents to extract from the samples the parts that differ. This can be accomplished in several ways:

In one approach, the material hybridized to the probes that show the greatest differences between samples can be micro-extracted from the high density array. For example, the hybridized nucleic acids can be removed using small capillaries. Alternatively probes that are anchored to the chip with a photolabile linker can be released by selective irradiation at the desired parts of the high-density array.

In another approach, because the sequence of all the probes on the high-density array is known, and the probes that hybridize differentially have been identified, the latter can be used as affinity reagents to extract the nucleic acids that differentially hybridize in the test samples. Once the differentially hybridizing probes are identified in the array, the probe (or probes) can be synthesized on beads (or other solid support) and hybridized to the samples (not necessarily fragmented for this step --full length clones may be desirable). The material that is extracted can be cloned and/or sequenced (as outlined

below). The differentially expressed species (i.e., clones) can be screened with labeled oligonucleotides to determine ones with appropriate inserts, and/or randomly chosen and sequenced).

In still another approach, the sequence of the hybridized probes of interest can be used to generate amplification primers (e.g., reverse transcription and/or PCR primers). The differentially expressed sequence can then be amplified and used as a probe to probe a genomic or cDNA library using sequence specific primers determined from the array in combination with specific sequences added during a reverse transcriptase cDNA step as described above (e.g., primerbased on poly A or added 3' sequence). Examples of appropriate cloning and sequencing techniques, and instructions sufficient to direct persons of skill through many cloning exercises are found in Berger and Kimmel, *Guide to Molecular Cloning Techniques, Methods in Enzymology* volume 152 Academic Press, Inc., San Diego, CA; Sambrook *et al.* (1989) *Molecular Cloning - A Laboratory Manual* (2nd ed.) Vol. 1-3; and *Current Protocols in Molecular Biology*, F.M. Ausubel *et al.*, eds., Current Protocols, a joint venture between Greene Publishing Associates, Inc. and John Wiley & Sons, Inc., (1994 Supplement) (Ausubel). Product information from manufacturers of biological reagents and experimental equipment also provide information useful in known biological methods. Such manufacturers include the SIGMA chemical company (Saint Louis, MO), R&D systems (Minneapolis, MN), Pharmacia LKB Biotechnology (Piscataway, NJ), CLONTECH Laboratories, Inc. (Palo Alto, CA), Chem Genes Corp., Aldrich Chemical Company (Milwaukee, WI), Glen Research, Inc., GIBCO BRL Life Technologies, Inc. (Gaithersburg, MD), Fluka Chemica-Biochemika Analytika (Fluka Chemie AG, Buchs, Switzerland), Invitrogen, San Diego, CA, and Applied Biosystems (Foster City, CA), as well as many other commercial sources known to one of skill.

In short, using the above-described method, differentially expressed genes can be identified without prior assumptions about which genes to monitor and without prior knowledge of sequence. Once identified (and sequenced if not a previously sequenced gene), the new sequences can be included in a high density array designed to detect and quantify specific genes in the same way as described in copending applications.

These and other implementations of the one can be used to broadly search for expression differences or perhaps unknown genes, while the other is used to more specifically

monitor those genes that have been chosen as important or those genes that have been previously at least partially sequenced.

XI. Kits for Expression Monitoring and Generic Difference Screening.

5 In another embodiment, this invention provides kits for expression monitoring and/or generic difference screening. The kits include, but are not limited to a container or containers containing one or more high density oligonucleotide arrays of this invention. Preferred kits for generic difference screening include at least two high density arrays. The kits can also include a label or labels for labeling one or more nucleic acid
10 samples. In addition, the kits can include one or more ligatable oligonucleotides. In certain embodiments, the kit contains pools of different ligatable oligonucleotides, preferably pools of every possible oligonucleotide of a particular length (e.g., all possible 6 mers) or sets of specific ligatable oligonucleotides. One of skill in the art will appreciate that the kits may include any other of the various blocking reagents, labels, devices (e.g.,
15 trays, microscope filters, syringes, *etc.*) buffers, and the like useful for performing the hybridizations and ligation reactions described herein. In addition, the kits may include software provided on a storage medium (e.g., optical or magnetic disk) for the selection of probes and/or the analysis of hybridization data as described herein. In addition, the kits may contain instructional materials teaching the use of the kit in the various methods of
20 this invention (e.g., in practice of various expression monitoring methods or generic difference screening methods described herein).

XII. Computer-Implemented Expression Monitoring.

The methods of monitoring gene expression of this invention may be
25 performed utilizing a computer. The computer typically runs a software program that includes computer code incorporating the invention for analyzing hybridization intensities

30 describe specific embodiments of the invention, the invention is not limited to any one embodiment so the following is for purposes of illustration and not limitation.

Fig. 6 illustrates an example of a computer system used to execute the software of an embodiment of the present invention. As shown, computer system 100 includes a monitor 102, screen 104, cabinet 106, keyboard 108, and mouse 110. Mouse 110 may have one or more buttons such as mouse buttons 112. Cabinet 106 houses a CD-ROM drive 114, a system memory and a hard drive (both shown in Fig. 7) which may be utilized to store and retrieve software programs incorporating computer code that implements the invention, data for use with the invention, and the like. Although a CD-ROM 116 is shown as an exemplary computer readable storage medium, other computer readable storage media including floppy disks, tape, flash memory, system memory, and hard drives may be utilized. Cabinet 106 also houses familiar computer components (not shown) such as a central processor, system memory, hard disk, and the like.

Fig. 7 shows a system block diagram of computer system 100 used to execute the software of an embodiment of the present invention. As in Fig. 6, computer system 100 includes monitor 102 and keyboard 108. Computer system 100 further includes subsystems such as a central processor 120, system memory 122, I/O controller 124, display adapter 126, removable disk 128 (e.g., CD-ROM drive), fixed disk 130 (e.g., hard drive), network interface 132, and speaker 134. Other computer systems suitable for use with the present invention may include additional or fewer subsystems. For example, another computer system could include more than one processor 120 (i.e., a multi-processor system) or a cache memory.

Arrows such as 136 represent the system bus architecture of computer system 100. However, these arrows are illustrative of any interconnection scheme serving to link the subsystems. For example, a local bus could be utilized to connect the central processor to the system memory and display adapter. Computer system 100 shown in Fig. 7 is but an example of a computer system suitable for use with the present invention. Other configurations of subsystems suitable for use with the present invention will be readily apparent to one of ordinary skill in the art.

FIG. 10 is a schematic diagram of a pair of perfect match and mismatch probes that are preferably covalently attached to the surface of a substrate or chip. Most preferably, the nucleic acid probes have a density greater than about 60

different nucleic acid probes per 1 cm² of the substrate. Although the flowcharts show a sequence of steps for clarity, this is not an indication that the steps must be performed in this specific order. One of ordinary skill in the art would readily recognize that many of the steps may be reordered, combined, and deleted without departing from the invention.

5 Initially, nucleic acid probes are selected that are complementary to the target sequence (or gene). These probes are the perfect match probes. Another set of probes is specified that are intended to be not perfectly complementary to the target sequence. These probes are the mismatch probes and each mismatch probe includes at least one nucleotide mismatch from a perfect match probe. Accordingly, a mismatch probe
10 and the perfect match probe from which it was derived make up a pair of probes. As mentioned earlier, the nucleotide mismatch is preferably near the center of the mismatch probe.

The probe lengths of the perfect match probes are typically chosen to exhibit high hybridization affinity with the target sequence. For example, the nucleic acid probes may be all 20-mers. However, probes of varying lengths may also be synthesized
15 on the substrate for any number of reasons including resolving ambiguities.

The target sequence is typically fragmented, labeled and exposed to a substrate including the nucleic acid probes as described earlier. The hybridization intensities of the nucleic acid probes is then measured and input into a computer system.
20 The computer system may be the same system that directs the substrate hybridization or it may be a different system altogether. Of course, any computer system for use with the invention should have available other details of the experiment including possibly the gene name, gene sequence, probe sequences, probe locations on the substrate, and the like.

Referring to Fig. 8, after hybridization, the computer system receives input
25 of hybridization intensities of the multiple pairs of perfect match and mismatch probes at step 202. The hybridization intensities indicate hybridization affinity between the nucleic acid probes and the target nucleic acid (which corresponds to a gene). Each pair includes

a perfect match probe and a mismatch probe that differs from the perfect match probe by at least one nucleotide.

30 At step 204, the computer system compares the hybridization intensities of the perfect match and mismatch probes of each pair. If the gene is expressed, the

hybridization intensity (or affinity) of a perfect match probe of a pair should be recognizably higher than the corresponding mismatch probe. Generally, if the hybridizations intensities of a pair of probes are substantially the same, it may indicate the gene is not expressed. However, the determination is not based on a single pair of probes, the determination of whether a gene is expressed is based on an analysis of many pairs of probes. An exemplary process of comparing the hybridization intensities of the pairs of probes will be described in more detail in reference to Fig. 9.

After the system compares the hybridization intensity of the perfect match and mismatch probes, the system indicates expression of the gene at step 206. As an example, the system may indicate to a user that the gene is either present (expressed), marginal or absent (unexpressed).

Fig. 9 shows a flowchart of a process of determining if a gene is expressed utilizing a decision matrix. At step 252, the computer system receives raw scan data of N pairs of perfect match and mismatch probes. In a preferred embodiment, the hybridization intensities are photon counts from a fluorescein labeled target that has hybridized to the probes on the substrate. For simplicity, the hybridization intensity of a perfect match probe will be designed " I_{pm} " and the hybridization intensity of a mismatch probe will be designed " I_{mm} ".

Hybridization intensities for a pair of probes is retrieved at step 254. The background signal intensity is subtracted from each of the hybridization intensities of the pair at step 256. Background subtraction may also be performed on all the raw scan data at the same time.

At step 258, the hybridization intensities of the pair of probes are compared to a difference threshold (D) and a ratio threshold (R). It is determined if the difference between the hybridization intensities of the pair ($I_{pm} - I_{mm}$) is greater than or equal to the difference threshold AND the quotient of the hybridization intensities of the pair (I_{pm} / I_{mm}) is greater than or equal to the ratio threshold. The difference thresholds are typically used

FIG. 9 is a flowchart illustrating a process of determining if a gene is expressed.

94

If $I_{pm} - I_{mm} \geq D$ and $I_{pm} / I_{mm} \geq R$, the value NPOS is incremented at step 260. In general, NPOS is a value that indicates the number of pairs of probes which have hybridization intensities indicating that the gene is likely expressed. NPOS is utilized in a determination of the expression of the gene.

5 At step 262, it is determined if $I_{mm} - I_{pm} \geq D$ and $I_{mm} / I_{pm} \geq R$. If this expression is true, the value NNEG is incremented at step 264. In general, NNEG is a value that indicates the number of pairs of probes which have hybridization intensities indicating that the gene is likely not expressed. NNEG, like NPOS, is utilized in a determination of the expression of the gene.

10 For each pair that exhibits hybridization intensities either indicating the gene is expressed or not expressed, a log ratio value (LR) and intensity difference value (IDIF) are calculated at step 266. LR is calculated by the log of the quotient of the hybridization intensities of the pair (I_{pm} / I_{mm}). The IDIF is calculated by the difference between the hybridization intensities of the pair ($I_{pm} - I_{mm}$). If there is a next pair of hybridization intensities at step 268, they are retrieved at step 254.

15 At step 272, a decision matrix is utilized to indicate if the gene is expressed. The decision matrix utilizes the values N, NPOS, NNEG, and LR (multiple LRs). The following four assignments are performed:

$$P1 = NPOS / NNEG$$

$$20 \quad P2 = NPOS / N$$

$$P3 = (10 * \text{SUM}(\text{LR})) / (NPOS + NNEG)$$

These P values are then utilized to determine if the gene is expressed.

For purposes of illustration, the P values are broken down into ranges. If P1 is greater than or equal to 2.1, then A is true. If P1 is less than 2.1 and greater than or equal to 1.8, then B is true. Otherwise, C is true. Thus, P1 is broken down into three ranges A, B and C. This is done to aid the readers understanding of the invention.

Thus, all of the P values are broken down into ranges according to the

$$30 \quad B = (2.1 > P1 \geq 1.8)$$

$$C = (P1 < 1.8)$$

95

$$X = (P2 \geq 0.35)$$

$$Y = (0.35 > P2 \geq 0.20)$$

$$Z = (P2 < 0.20)$$

$$5 \quad Q = (P3 \geq 1.5)$$

$$R = (1.5 > P3 \geq 1.1)$$

$$S = (P3 < 1.1)$$

Once the P values are broken down into ranges according to the above boolean values, the gene expression is determined.

10 The gene expression is indicated as present (expressed), marginal or absent (not expressed). The gene is indicated as expressed if the following expression is true: A and (X or Y) and (Q or R). In other words, the gene is indicated as expressed if $P1 \geq 2.1$, $P2 \geq 0.20$ and $P3 \geq 1.1$. Additionally, the gene is indicated as expressed if the following expression is true: B and X and Q.

15 With the forgoing explanation, the following is a summary of the gene expression indications:

Present	A and (X or Y) and (Q or R)
	B and X and I

20	Marginal	A and X and S
		B and X and R
		B and Y and (Q or R)

Absent	All others cases (e.g., any C combination)
--------	--

25 In the output to the user, present may be indicated as "P," marginal as "M" and absent as "A" at step 274.

Once all the pairs of probes have been processed and the expression is

the data incremented, NPOS and NNEG are calculated. These values may be utilized for quantitative comparisons of this experiments with other experiments.

Quantitative measurements may be performed at step 276. For example, the current experiment may be compared to a previous experiment (e.g., utilizing values calculated at step 270). Additionally, the experiment may be compared to hybridization intensities of RNA (such as from bacteria) present in the biological sample in a known quantity. In this manner, one may verify the correctness of the gene expression indication or call, modify threshold values, or perform any number of modifications of the preceding.

For simplicity, Fig. 9 was described in reference to a single gene. However, the process may be utilized on multiple genes in a biological sample. Therefore, any discussion of the analysis of a single gene is not an indication that the process may not be extended to processing multiple genes.

Figs. 10A and 10B show the flow of a process of determining the expression of a gene by comparing baseline scan data and experimental scan data. For example, the baseline scan data may be from a biological sample where it is known the gene is expressed. Thus, this scan data may be compared to a different biological sample to determine if the gene is expressed. Additionally, it may be determined how the expression of a gene or genes changes over time in a biological organism.

At step 302, the computer system receives raw scan data of N pairs of perfect match and mismatch probes from the baseline. The hybridization intensity of a perfect match probe from the baseline will be designed " I_{pm} " and the hybridization intensity of a mismatch probe from the baseline will be designed " I_{mm} ." The background signal intensity is subtracted from each of the hybridization intensities of the pairs of baseline scan data at step 304.

At step 306, the computer system receives raw scan data of N pairs of perfect match and mismatch probes from the experimental biological sample. The hybridization intensity of a perfect match probes from the experiment will be designed " J_{pm} " and the hybridization intensity of a mismatch probe from the experiment will be

The hybridization intensities of an I and J pair may be normalized at step 310. For example, the hybridization intensities of the I and J pairs may be divided by the hybridization intensity of control probes as discussed above in Section IV(A)

97

At step 312, the hybridization intensities of the I and J pair of probes are compared to a difference threshold (DDIF) and a ratio threshold (RDIF). It is determined if the difference between the hybridization intensities of the one pair ($J_{pm} - J_{mm}$) and the other pair ($I_{pm} - I_{mm}$) are greater than or equal to the difference threshold AND the quotient of the hybridization intensities of one pair ($J_{pm} - J_{mm}$) and the other pair ($I_{pm} - I_{mm}$) are greater than or equal to the ratio threshold. The difference thresholds are typically user defined values that have been determined to produce accurate expression monitoring of a gene or genes.

If $(J_{pm} - J_{mm}) - (I_{pm} - I_{mm}) \geq DDIF$ and $(J_{pm} - J_{mm}) / (I_{pm} - I_{mm}) \geq RDIF$, the value NINC is incremented at step 314. In general, NINC is a value that indicates the experimental pair of probes indicates that the gene expression is likely greater (or increased) than the baseline sample. NINC is utilized in a determination of whether the expression of the gene is greater (or increased), less (or decreased) or did not change in the experimental sample compared to the baseline sample.

At step 316, it is determined if $(J_{pm} - J_{mm}) - (I_{pm} - I_{mm}) \geq DDIF$ and $(J_{pm} - J_{mm}) / (I_{pm} - I_{mm}) \geq RDIF$. If this expression is true, NDEC is incremented. In general, NDEC is a value that indicates the experimental pair of probes indicates that the gene expression is likely less (or decreased) than the baseline sample. NDEC is utilized in a determination of whether the expression of the gene is greater (or increased), less (or decreased) or did not change in the experimental sample compared to the baseline sample.

For each of the pairs that exhibits hybridization intensities either indicating the gene is expressed more or less in the experimental sample, the values NPOS, NNEG and LR are calculated for each pair of probes. These values are calculated as discussed above in reference to Fig. 9. A suffix of either "B" or "E" has been added to each value in order to indicate if the value denotes the baseline sample or the experimental sample, respectively. If there are next pairs of hybridization intensities at step 322, they are processed in a similar manner as shown.

FIG. 10 is a flowchart illustrating the logic of the absolute decision computation. The absolute decision computation is an indication of whether the gene is expressed, marginal or absent in each of the baseline and experimental samples. Accordingly, in a preferred embodiment, this

98

step entails performing steps 272 and 274 from Fig. 9 for each of the samples. This being done, there is an indication of gene expression for each of the samples taken alone.

At step 326, a decision matrix is utilized to determine the difference in gene expression between the two samples. This decision matrix utilizes the values, N, NPOSB, NPOSE, NNEGB, NNEGE, NINC, NDEC, LRB, and LRE as they were calculated above.

The decision matrix performs different calculations depending on whether NINC is greater than or equal to NDEC. The calculations are as follows.

If $NINC \geq NDEC$, the following four P values are determined:

$$\begin{aligned} P1 &= NINC / NDEC \\ P2 &= NINC / N \\ P3 &= ((NPOSE - NPOSB) - (NNEGE - NNEGB)) / N \\ P4 &= 10 * \text{SUM}(LRE - LRB) / N \end{aligned}$$

These P values are then utilized to determine the difference in gene expression between the two samples.

For purposes of illustration, the P values are broken down into ranges as was done previously. Thus, all of the P values are broken down into ranges according to the following:

$$\begin{aligned} A &= (P1 \geq 2.7) \\ B &= (2.7 > P1 \geq 1.8) \\ C &= (P1 < 1.8) \\ X &= (P2 \geq 0.24) \\ Y &= (0.24 > P2 \geq 0.16) \\ Z &= (P2 < 0.160) \\ M &= (P3 \geq 0.17) \end{aligned}$$

30

$$Q = (P4 \geq 1.3)$$

99

$$R = (1.3 > P4 \geq 0.9)$$

$$S = (P4 < 0.9)$$

5 Once the P values are broken down into ranges according to the above boolean values, the difference in gene expression between the two samples is determined.

In this case where $NINC \geq NDEC$, the gene expression change is indicated as increased, marginal increase or no change. The following is a summary of the gene expression indications:

10	Increased	A and (X or Y) and (Q or R) and (M or N or O)
		A and (X or Y) and (Q or R or S) and (M or N)
		B and (X or Y) and (Q or R) and (M or N)
		A and X and (Q or R or S) and (M or N or O)
15	Marginal	A or Y or S or O
	Increase	B and (X or Y) and (Q or R) and O
		B and (X or Y) and S and (M or N)
		C and (X or Y) and (Q or R) and (M or N)
20	No Change	All others cases (e.g., any Z combination)

In the output to the user, increased may be indicated as "I," marginal increase as "MI" and no change as "NC."

If $NINC < NDEC$, the following four P values are determined:

25

$$P1 = NDEC / NINC$$

$$P2 = NDEC / N$$

$$P3 = ((NNEGE - NNEGB) - (NPOSE - NPOSB)) / N$$

These P values are then utilized to determine the difference in gene expression between the two samples.

/cc

The P values are broken down into the same ranges as for the other case where $NINC \geq NDEC$. Thus, P values in this case indicate the same ranges and will not be repeated for the sake of brevity. However, the ranges generally indicate different changes in the gene expression between the two samples as shown below.

5 In this case where $NINC < NDEC$, the gene expression change is indicated as decreased, marginal decrease or no change. The following is a summary of the gene expression indications:

10	Decreased	A and (X or Y) and (Q or R) and (M or N or O) A and (X or Y) and (Q or R or S) and (M or N) B and (X or Y) and (Q or R) and (M or N) A and X and (Q or R or S) and (M or N or O)
----	-----------	---

15	Marginal Decrease	A or Y or S or O B and (X or Y) and (Q or R) and O B and (X or Y) and S and (M or N) C and (X or Y) and (Q or R) and (M or N)
----	----------------------	--

20	No Change	All others cases (e.g., any Z combination)
----	-----------	--

In the output to the user, decreased may be indicated as "D," marginal decrease as "MD" and no change as "NC."

25 The above has shown that the relative difference between the gene expression between a baseline sample and an experimental sample may be determined. An additional test may be performed that would change an I, MI, D, or MD (i.e., not NC) call to NC if the gene is indicated as expressed in both samples (e.g., from step 324) and the following expressions are all true:

30	Average(IDIFE) ≥ 200 1.4 \geq Average(IDIFE) / Average(IDIFB) ≥ 0.7
----	--

Thus, when a gene is expressed in both samples, a call of increased or decreased (whether marginal or not) will be changed to a no change call if the average intensity difference for each sample is relatively large or substantially the same for both samples. The IDIFB and IDIFE are calculated as the sum of all the IDIFs for each sample divided by N.

- 5 At step 328, values for quantitative difference evaluation are calculated. An average of $((J_{pm} - J_{mm}) - (I_{pm} - I_{mm}))$ for each of the pairs is calculated. Additionally, a quotient of the average of $J_{pm} - J_{mm}$ and the average of $I_{pm} - I_{mm}$ is calculated. These values may be utilized to compare the results with other experiments in step 330.

10

EXAMPLES

The following examples are offered to illustrate, but not to limit the present invention.

Example 1

15 ***First Generation Oligonucleotide Arrays Designed to Measure mRNA Levels for a Small Number of Murine Cytokines.***

A) Preparation of Labeled RNA.

1) From Each of the Preselected Genes.

- Fourteen genes (IL-2, IL-3, IL-4, IL-6, IL-10, IL-12p40, GM-CSF, IFN- γ ,
20 TNF- α , CTLA8, β -actin, GAPDH, IL-11 receptor, and Bio B) were each cloned into the p Bluescript II KS (+) phagemid (Stratagene, La Jolla, California, USA). The orientation of the insert was such that T3 RNA polymerase gave sense transcripts and T7 polymerase gave antisense RNA.

- Labeled ribonucleotides in an in vitro transcription (IVT) reaction. Either
25 biotin- or fluorescein-labeled UTP and CTP (1:3 labeled to unlabeled) plus unlabeled ATP and GTP were used for the reaction with 2500 units of T7 RNA polymerase (Epicentre Technologies, Madison, WI).

- A typical *in vitro* transcription reaction used 2 μ g DNA template, a
30 buffer such as that included in Ambion's Maxiscript *in vitro* Transcription Kit (Ambion Inc., Huston, Texas, USA) and GTP (3 mM), ATP (1.5 mM), and CTP and fluorescein-

102

UTP (3 mM total, UTP: FI-UTP 3:1) or UTP and fluoresceinated CTP (2 mM total, CTP: FI-CTP, 3:1). Reactions done in the Ambion buffer had 20 mM DTT and RNase inhibitor. The reaction was run from 1.5 to about 8 hours.

Following the reaction, unincorporated nucleotide triphosphates were removed using a size-selective membrane (microcon-100) or Pharmacia microspin S-200 column. The total molar concentration of RNA was based on a measurement of the absorbance at 260 nm. Following quantitation of RNA amounts, RNA was fragmented randomly to an average length of approximately 50 - 100 bases by heating at 94°C in 40 mM Tris-acetate pH 8.1, 100 mM potassium acetate, 30 mM magnesium acetate for 30 - 40 minutes. Fragmentation reduces possible interference from RNA secondary structure, and minimizes the effects of multiple interactions with closely spaced probe molecules.

2) From cDNA libraries.

Labeled RNA was produced from one of two murine cell lines; T10, a B cell plasmacytoma which was known not to express the genes (except IL-10, actin and GAPDH) used as target genes in this study, and 2D6, an IL-12 growth dependent T cell line (Th₁ subtype) that is known to express most of the genes used as target genes in this study. Thus, RNA derived from the T10 cell line provided a good total RNA baseline mixture suitable for spiking with known quantities of RNA from the particular target genes. In contrast, mRNA derived from the 2D6 cell line provided a good positive control providing typical endogenously transcribed amounts of the RNA from the target genes.

i) The T10 murine B cell line.

The T10 cell line (B cells) was derived from the IL-6 dependent murine plasmacytoma line T1165 (Nordan *et al.* (1986) *Science* 233: 566-569) by selection in the presence of IL-11. To prepare the directional cDNA library, total cellular RNA was isolated from T10 cells using RNeasyStat60 (Tel-Test B) and poly(A)⁺ RNA was isolated using RNeasyStat60 (Tel-Test B). The cDNA library was synthesized according to Fodor *et al.* (1984) *Nature* 312: 842-847, except that 5-methyldeoxycytidine 5'triphosphate (Pharmacia LKB, Piscataway, New Jersey, USA) was substituted for DCTP in both reactions.

103

To determine cDNA frequencies T10 libraries were plated, and DNA was transferred to nitrocellulose filters and probed with ^{32}P -labeled β -actin, GAPDH and IL-10 probes. Actin was represented at a frequency of 1:3000, GAPDH at 1:1000, and IL-10 at 1:35,000. Labeled sense and antisense T10 RNA samples were synthesized from NotI and SfiI cut CDNA libraries in *in vitro* transcription reactions as described above.

ii) The 2D6 murine helper T cells line.

The 2D6 cell line is a murine IL-12 dependent T cell line developed by Fujiwara *et al.* Cells were cultured in RPMI 1640 medium with 10% heat inactivated fetal calf serum (JRH Biosciences), 0.05 mM P-mercaptoethanol and recombinant murine IL-12 (100 units/mL, Genetics Institute, Cambridge, Massachusetts, USA). For cytokine induction, cells were preincubated overnight in IL-12 free medium and then resuspended (10^6 cells/mL). After incubation for 0, 2, 6 and 24 hours in media containing 5 nM calcium ionophore A23187 (Sigma Chemical Co., St. Louis Missouri, USA) and 100 nM 4-phorbol-12-myristate 13-acetate (Sigma), cells were collected by centrifugation and washed once with phosphate buffered saline prior to isolation of RNA.

Labeled 2D6 mRNA was produced by directionally cloning the 2D6 cDNA with α ZipLox, NotI-Sall arms available from GibcoBRL in a manner similar to T10. The linearized pZ11 library was transcribed with T7 to generate sense RNA as described above.

iii) RNA preparation.

For material made directly from cellular RNA, cytoplasmic RNA was extracted from cells by the method of Favaloro *et al.*, (1980) *Meth. Enzym.*, 65: 718-749, and poly (A)⁺ RNA was isolated with an oligo dT selection step (PolyAtract, Promega,). RNA was amplified using a modification of the procedure described by Eberwine *et al.* (1992) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 89: 3010-3014 (see also Van Gelder *et al.* (1990) *Science* 87: 1663-1667). One microgram of poly (A)⁺ RNA was converted to first

strand cDNA using a reverse transcriptase promoter site. After second strand synthesis, the reaction mixture was extracted with phenol/chloroform and the double-stranded DNA isolated using a membrane filtration step (Microcon-100, Amicon, Inc. Beverly,

104

Massachusetts, USA). Labeled cRNA was made directly from the cDNA pool with an IVT step as described above. The total molar concentration of labeled CRNA was determined from the absorbance at 260 and assuming an average RNA size of 1000 ribonucleotides. RNA concentration was calculated using the conventional conversion that 1 OD is
5 equivalent to 40 µg of RNA, and that 1 µg of cellular mRNA consists of 3 pmoles of RNA molecules.

Cellular mRNA was also labeled directly without any intermediate cDNA or RNA synthesis steps. Poly (A)⁺ RNA was fragmented as described above, and the 5' ends of the fragments were kinased and then incubated overnight with a biotinylated
10 oligoribonucleotide (5'-biotin-AAAAAA-3') in the presence of T4 RNA ligase (Epicentre Technologies). Alternatively, mRNA was labeled directly by UV-induced crosslinking to a psoralen derivative linked to biotin (Schleicher & Schuell).

B) High Density Array Preparation

15 A high density array of 20 mer oligonucleotide probes was produced using VLSIPS technology. The high density array included the oligonucleotide probes as listed in Table 2. A central mismatch control probe was provided for each gene-specific probe resulting in a high density array containing over 16,000 different oligonucleotide probes.

105

Table 2. High density array design. For every probe there was also a mismatch control having a central 1 base mismatch.

Probe Type		Target Nucleic Acid	Number of Probes
5	Test Probes:	IL-2	691
		IL-3	751
		IL-4	361
		IL-6	691
		IL-10	481
10		IL-12p40	911
		GM-CSF	661
		IFN- γ	991
		TNF- α	641
		mCTLA8	391
15	House Keeping Genes:	IL-11 receptor	158
		GAPDH	388
		β -actin	669
		Bacterial gene (sample preparation/amplification control)	286
20			

The high density array was synthesized on a planar glass slide.

C) Array Hybridization and Scanning.

The RNA transcribed from cDNA was hybridized to the high density oligonucleotide probe array(s) at low stringency and then washed under more stringent conditions. The hybridization solutions contained 0.9 M NaCl, 60 mM NaH₂PO₄, 6 mM EDTA and 0.005 % Triton X-100, adjusted to pH 7.6 (referred to as 6x SSPE-T). In addition, the solutions contained 0.5 mg/ml unlabeled, degraded herring sperm DNA (Sigma, Chem. Co.).

The arrays were prehybridized in 6xSSPE-T at 22°C for 10 minutes, and allowed to equilibrate at room temperature before being placed in the hybridization flow cell. Following hybridization, the solution was removed, the arrays were washed with 6xSSPE-T at 22°C for 7 minutes, and then washed with 0.5x SSPE-T at 22°C for 7 minutes.

106

40°C for 15 minutes. When biotin-labeled RNA was used, the hybridized RNA was stained with a streptavidin-phycoerythrin conjugate (Molecular Probes, Inc., Eugene, Oregon, USA) prior to reading. Hybridized arrays were stained with 2 µg/ml streptavidin-phycoerythrin in 6xSSPE-T at 40°C for 5 minutes.

5 The arrays were read using scanning confocal microscope (Molecular Dynamics, Sunnyvale, California, USA) modified for the purpose. The scanner uses an argon ion laser as the excitation source, and the emission was detected with a photomultiplier tube through either a 530 nm bandpass filter (fluorescein) or a 560 nm longpass filter (phycoerythrin).

10 Nucleic acids of either sense or antisense orientations were used in hybridization experiments. Arrays with for either orientation (reverse complements of each other) were made using the same set of photolithographic masks by reversing the order of the photochemical steps and incorporating the complementary nucleotide.

15 ***D) Quantitative Analysis of Hybridization Patterns and Intensities.***

 The quantitative analysis of the hybridization results involved counting the instances in which the perfect match probe (PM) was brighter than the corresponding mismatch probe (MM), averaging the differences (PM minus MM) for each probe family (*i.e.*, probe collection for each gene), and comparing the values to those obtained in a side-by-side experiment on an identically synthesized array with an unspiked sample (if applicable). The advantage of the difference method is that signals from random cross hybridization contribute equally, on average, to the PM and MM probes while specific hybridization contributes more to the PM probes. By averaging the pairwise differences, the real signals add constructively while the contributions from cross hybridization tend to cancel.

20

25

 The magnitude of the changes in the average of the difference (PM-MM) values was interpreted by comparison with the results of spiking experiments.

 The data were analyzed using the following methods. The data were first analyzed using a principal component analysis was performed using algorithms and software described herein.

30

E) Optimization of Probe Selection

167

In order to optimize probe selection for each of the target genes, the high density array of oligonucleotide probes was hybridized with the mixture of labeled RNAs transcribed from each of the target genes. Fluorescence intensity at each location on the high density array was determined by scanning the high density array with a laser illuminated scanning confocal fluorescence microscope connected to a data acquisition system.

Probes were then selected for further data analysis in a two-step procedure. First, in order to be counted, the difference in intensity between a probe and its corresponding mismatch probe had to exceed a threshold limit (50 counts, or about half background, in this case). This eliminated from consideration probes that did not hybridize well and probes for which the mismatch control hybridizes at an intensity comparable to the perfect match.

The high density array was hybridized to a labeled RNA sample which, in principle, contains none of the sequences on the high density array. In this case, the oligonucleotide probes were chosen to be complementary to the sense RNA. Thus, an anti-sense RNA population should have been incapable of hybridizing to any of the probes on the array. Where either a probe or its mismatch showed a signal above a threshold value (100 counts above background) it was not included in subsequent analysis.

Then, the signal for a particular gene was counted as the average difference (perfect match - mismatch control) for the selected probes for each gene.

E) Results: The High Density Arrays Provide Specific and Sensitive Detection of Target Nucleic Acids.

As explained above, the initial arrays contained more than 16,000 probes that were complementary to 12 murine mRNAs - 9 cytokines, 1 cytokine receptor, 2 constitutively expressed genes (5-actin and glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate dehydrogenase) - 1 rat cytokine and 1 bacterial gene (*E. coli* biotin synthetase, *bioB*) which serves as a

negative control. The arrays of synthesized oligonucleotides can be made to hybridize with sufficient sensitivity and specificity to quantitatively detect RNAs in a complex cellular RNA population. These arrays were intentionally highly redundant.

108

containing hundreds of oligonucleotide probes per RNA, many more than necessary for the determination of expression levels. This was done to investigate the hybridization behavior of a large number of probes and develop general sequence rules for *a priori* selection of minimal probe sets for arrays covering substantially larger numbers of genes.

5 The oligonucleotide arrays contained collections of pairs of probes for each of the RNAs being monitored. Each probe pair consisted of a 20-mer that was perfectly complementary (referred to as a perfect match, or PM probe) to a subsequence of a particular message, and a companion that was identical except for a single base difference in a central position. The mismatch (MM) probe of each pair served as an internal control

10 for hybridization specificity. The analysis of PM/MM pairs allowed low intensity hybridization patterns from rare RNAs to be sensitively and accurately recognized in the presence of crosshybridization signals.

 For array hybridization experiments, labeled RNA target samples were prepared from individual clones, cloned cDNA libraries, or directly from cellular mRNA

15 as described above. Target RNA for array hybridization was prepared by incorporating fluorescently labeled ribonucleotides in an *in vitro* transcription (IVT) reaction and then randomly fragmenting the RNA to an average size of 30 - 100 bases. Samples were hybridized to arrays in a self-contained flow cell (volume ~200 μ L) for times ranging from 30 minutes to 22 hours. Fluorescence imaging of the arrays was accomplished with a

20 scanning confocal microscope (Molecular Dynamics). The entire array was read at a resolution of 11.25 μ m (~80-fold oversampling in each of the 100 x 100 μ m synthesis regions) in less than 15 minutes, yielding a rapid and quantitative measure of each of the individual hybridization reactions.

25 **1) Specificity of Hybridization**

 In order to evaluate the specificity of hybridization, the high density array described above was hybridized with 50 pM of the RNA concentration. CH₂OH-2'-UTP, 2'-UTP, and Bio-Rad. The hybridized array showed strong specific signals for each of the test target

30 nucleic acids with minimal cross hybridization.

169

2) Detection of Gene Expression levels in a complex target sample.

To determine how well individual RNA targets could be detected in the presence of total mammalian cell message populations, spiking experiments were carried out. Known amounts of individual RNA targets were spiked into labeled RNA derived from a representative cDNA library made from the murine B cell line T10. The T10 cell line was chosen because of the cytokines being monitored, only IL-10 is expressed at a detectable level.

Because simply spiking the RNA mixture with the selected target genes and then immediately hybridizing might provide an artificially elevated reading relative to the rest of the mixture, the spiked sample was treated to a series of procedures to mitigate differences between the library RNA and the added RNA. Thus the "spike" was added to the sample which was then heated to 37°C and annealed. The sample was then frozen, thawed, boiled for 5 minutes, cooled on ice and allowed to return to room temperature before performing the hybridization.

Figure 2A shows the results of an experiment in which 13 target RNAs were spiked into the total RNA pool at a level of 1:3000 (equivalent to a few hundred copies per cell). RNA frequencies are given as the molar amount of an individual RNA per mole of total RNA. Figure 2B shows a small portion of the array (the boxed region of 2A) containing probes specific for interleukin-2 and interleukin-3 (IL-2 and IL-3,) RNA, and Figure 2C shows the same region in the absence of the spiked targets. The hybridization signals are specific as indicated by the comparison between the spiked and unspiked images, and perfect match (PM) hybridizations are well discriminated from mismatches (MM) as shown by the pattern of alternating brighter rows (corresponding to PM probes) and darker rows (corresponding to MM probes). The observed variation among the different perfect match hybridization signals was highly reproducible and reflects the sequence dependence of the hybridizations. In a few instances, the perfect match (PM) probe was not significantly brighter than its mismatch (MM) partner be

cause the signals were highly reproducible and because detection does not depend on only a single probe per RNA, infrequent cross hybridization of this type did not preclude sensitive and accurate detection of even low level RNAs.

110

Similarly, infrequent poor hybridization due to, for example, RNA or probe secondary structure, the presence of polymorphism or database sequence errors does not preclude detection. An analysis of the observed patterns of hybridization and cross hybridization led to the formulation of general rules for the selection of oligonucleotide probes with the best sensitivity and specificity described herein.

3) Relationship between Target Concentration and Hybridization Signal

A second set of spiking experiments was carried out to determine the range of concentrations over which hybridization signals could be used for direct quantitation of RNA levels. Figure 3 shows the results of experiments in which the ten cytokine RNAs were spiked together into 0.05 mg/ml of labeled RNA from the B cell (T10) cDNA library at levels ranging from 1:300 to 1:300,000. A frequency of 1:300,000 is that of an mRNA present at less than a few copies per cell. In 10 µg of total RNA and a volume of 200 µl, a frequency of 1:300,000 corresponds to a concentration of approximately 0.5 picomolar and 0.1 femptomole ($\sim 6 \times 10^7$ molecules or about 30 picograms) of specific RNA.

Hybridizations were carried out in parallel at 40°C for 15 to 16 hours. The presence of each of the 10 cytokine RNAs was reproducibly detected above the background even at the lowest frequencies. Furthermore, the hybridization intensity was linearly related to RNA target concentration between 1:300,000 and 1:3000 (Figure 3). Between 1:3000 and 1:300, the signals increased by a factor of 4 - 5 rather than 10 because the probe sites were beginning to saturate at the higher concentrations in the course of a 15 hour hybridization. The linear response range can be extended to higher concentrations by reducing the hybridization time. Short and long hybridizations can be combined to quantitatively cover more than a 10^4 -fold range in RNA concentration.

Blind spiking experiments were performed to test the ability to simultaneously detect and quantitate multiple related RNAs present at a wide range of concentrations in a complex RNA population. A set of four samples was prepared, each containing a different combination of the 10 cytokine RNAs each at a different concentration. Individual cytokine RNAs were spiked at one of the following levels: 0, 1:300,000, 1:30,000, 1:3000, or 1:300. The four samples plus an unspiked reference were hybridized to separate arrays

for 15 hours at 40°C. The presence or absence of an RNA target was determined by the pattern of hybridization and how it differed from that of the unspiked reference, and the concentrations were detected by the intensities. The concentrations of each of the ten cytokines in the four blind samples were correctly determined, with no false positives or false negatives.

One case is especially noteworthy: IL-10 is expressed in the mouse B cells used to make the CDNA library, and was known to be present in the library at a frequency of 1:60,000 to 1:30,000. In one of the unknowns, an additional amount of IL-10 RNA (corresponding to a frequency of 1:300,000) was spiked into the sample. The amount of the spiked IL-10 RNA was correctly determined, even though it represented an increase of only 10 - 20% above the intrinsic level. These results indicate that subtle changes in expression are sensitively determined by performing side-by-side experiments with identically prepared samples on identically synthesized arrays.

Example 2

T Cell Induction Experiments Measuring Cytokine mRNAs as a Function of Time Following Stimulation.

The high density arrays of this invention were next used to monitor cytokine mRNA levels in murine T cells at different times following a biochemical stimulus. Cells from the murine T helper cell line (2D6) were treated with the phorbol ester 4-phorbol-12-myristate 13-acetate (PMA) and a calcium ionophore. Poly (A)⁺ mRNA was then isolated at 0, 2, 6 and 24 hours after stimulation. Isolated mRNA (approximately 1 µg) was converted to labeled antisense RNA using a procedure that combines a double-stranded cDNA synthesis step with a subsequent *in vitro* transcription reaction. This RNA synthesis and labeling procedure amplifies the entire mRNA population by 20 to 50-fold in an apparently unbiased and reproducible fashion (Table 2).

TABLE 2. Cytokine mRNA Levels in 2D6 T Cells Following Stimulation with PMA and Calcium Ionophore. The table shows the relative mRNA levels of various cytokines at different time points after stimulation. The IL-3 mRNA level was observed, along with significant changes in four other cytokine mRNAs (IL-3, IL-10, GM-CSF and TNFα). As shown in Figure 4, the cytokine messages were not

induced with identical kinetics. Changes in cytokine mRNA levels of less than 1:130,000 were unambiguously detected along with the very large changes observed for γ -interferon.

These results highlight the value of the large experimental dynamic range inherent in the method. The quantitative assessment of RNA levels from the hybridization results is direct, with no additional control hybridizations, sample manipulation, amplification, cloning or sequencing. The method is also efficient. Using current protocols, instrumentation and analysis software, a single user with a single scanner can read and analyze as many as 30 arrays in a day.

Example 3

Higher-Density Arrays Containing 65,000 Probes for Over 100 Murine Genes

Figure 5 shows an array that contains over 65,000 different oligonucleotide probes (50 μ m feature size) following hybridization with an entire murine B cell RNA population. Arrays of this complexity were read at a resolution of 7.5 μ m in less than fifteen minutes. The array contains probes for 118 genes including 12 murine genes represented on the simpler array described above, 35 U.S.C. §102() additional murine genes, three bacterial genes and one phage gene. There are approximately 300 probe pairs per gene, with the probes chosen using the selection rules described herein. The probes were chosen from the 600 bases of sequence at the 3' end of the translated region of each gene. A total of 21 murine RNAs were unambiguously detected in the B cell RNA population, at levels ranging from approximately 1:300,000 to 1:100.

Labeled RNA samples from the T cell induction experiments (Fig. 4) were hybridized to these more complex 118-gene arrays, and similar results were obtained for the set of genes in common to both chip types. Expression changes were unambiguously observed for more than 20 other genes in addition to those shown in Figure 4.

For each gene, the data were analyzed using ten different subsets of 20 probe pairs per gene. That is to say, the data were analyzed as if the arrays contained only 20 probe pairs per gene. The ten subsets of 20 pairs were chosen from the approximately 300 probe pairs per gene on the array. The

113

initial probe selection was made utilizing the probe selection and pruning algorithms described above. The ten subjects of 20 pairs were then randomly chosen from those probes that survived selection and pruning. Labeled RNAs were spiked into the murine B cell RNA population at levels of 1:25,000, 1:50,000 and 1:100,000. Changes in hybridization signals for the spiked RNAs were consistently detected at all three levels with the smaller probe sets. As expected, the hybridization intensities do not cluster as tightly as when averaging over larger numbers of probes. This analysis indicates that sets of 20 probe pairs per gene are sufficient for the measurement of expression changes at low levels, but that improvements in probe selection and experimental procedures will be preferred to routinely detect RNAs at the very lowest levels with such small probe sets. Such improvements include, but are not limited to higher stringency hybridizations coupled with use of slightly longer oligonucleotide probes (e.g., 25 mer probes) are in progress.

15

Example 4

Scale Up to Thousands of Genes

A set of four high density arrays each containing 25-mer oligonucleotide probes approximately 1650 different human genes provided probes to a total of 6620 genes. There were about 20 probes for each gene. The feature size on arrays was 50 microns. This high density array was successfully hybridized to a cDNA library using essentially the protocols described above. Similar sets of high density arrays containing oligonucleotide probes to every known expressed sequence tag (EST) are in preparation.

20

Example 5

Direct Scale up for the Simultaneous Monitoring of Tens of Thousands of RNAs.

25

The above-described technology is readily scalable to the monitoring of very large numbers of mRNAs. The number of RNAs monitored can be increased greatly by decreasing the number of probes per RNA and increasing the number of probes per array. For example, using the above-described technology, arrays containing 1 million (1,000,000)

30

114

probes in an area of 1.6 cm² (20 x 20 μm synthesis features) are currently synthesized and read. Using 20 probe pairs per gene allows 10,000 genes to be monitored on a single array while maintaining the important advantages of probe redundancy. A set of four such arrays could cover the more than 40,000 human genes for which there are expressed sequence tags (ESTs) in the public data bases, and new ESTs can be incorporated as they become available. Because of the combinatorial nature of the chemical synthesis, arrays of this complexity are made in the same amount of time with the same number of steps as the simpler ones used here. The use of even fewer probes per gene and arrays of higher density makes possible the simultaneous monitoring of all sequenced human genes on a single, or small number of small chips.

The quantitative monitoring of expression levels for large numbers of genes will prove valuable in elucidating gene function, exploring the causes and mechanisms of disease, and for the discovery of potential therapeutic and diagnostic targets. As the body of genomic information grows, highly parallel methods of the type described here provide an efficient and direct way to use sequence information to help elucidate the underlying physiology of the cell.

Example 6

Probe Selection Using a Neural Net

A neural net can be trained to predict the hybridization and cross hybridization intensities of a probe based on the sequence of bases in the probe, or on other probe properties. The neural net can then be used to pick an arbitrary number of the "best" probes. When a neural net was trained to do this it produced a moderate (0.7) correlation between predicted intensity and measured intensity, with a better model for cross hybridization than hybridization.

4. Input/Output Mapping

The 20-mer probes were mapped to an eighty-bit long input vector, with the first four bits representing the base in the first position of the probe, the next four bits

115

representing the base in the second position, *etc.* Thus, the four bases were encoded as follows:

A: 1000 C: 0100 G: 0010 T: 0001

The neural network produced two outputs; hybridization intensity, and crosshybridization intensity. The output was scaled linearly so that 95% of the outputs from the actual experiments fell in the range 0. to 1.

B) Neural Net Architecture.

The neural net was a backpropagation network with 80 input neurons, one hidden layer of 20 neurons, and an output layer of two neurons. A sigmoid transfer function was used: $(s(x) = 1/(1 + \exp(-1 * x)))$ that scales the input values from 0 to 1 in a non-linear (sigmoid) manner.

C) Neural Net Training.

15 The network was trained using the default parameters from Neural Works Professional 2.5 for a backprop network. (Neural Works Professional is a product of NeuralWare, Pittsburgh Pennsylvania, USA). The training set consisted of approximately 8000 examples of probes, and the associated hybridization and crosshybridization intensities.

D) Neural Net Weights.

Neural net weights are provided in two matrices; an 81 x 20 matrix (Table 3) (weights 1) and a 2 x 20 matrix Table 4 (weights 2).

25 **Table 3.** Neural net weights (81 x 20 matrix) (weights 1).

	-0.0316746	-0.0263491	0.15907079	-0.0353881	-0.0529314	0.09014647
	0.19370709	-0.0515666	0.06444275	-0.0480836	0.29237783	-0.034054
	0.02240546	0.08460676	0.14313674	0.06798329	0.04734731	0.00000000
20	0.16792387	0.00000000	0.00000000	0.00000000	0.00000000	0.00000000
	0.00000000	0.00000000	0.00000000	0.00000000	0.00000000	0.00000000
	0.00000000	0.00000000	0.00000000	0.00000000	0.00000000	0.00000000
	0.00000000	0.00000000	0.00000000	0.00000000	0.00000000	0.00000000
	0.00000000	0.00000000	0.00000000	0.00000000	0.00000000	0.00000000
	0.00000000	0.00000000	0.00000000	0.00000000	0.00000000	0.00000000
	0.00000000	0.00000000	0.00000000	0.00000000	0.00000000	0.00000000
	0.00000000	0.00000000	0.00000000	0.00000000	0.00000000	0.00000000
35	0.01354388	0.1131407	0.06123798	0.14818664	0.07090721	0.05089445

116

	-0.0635492	-0.0227965	0.1081195	0.13419148	0.08916269	-0.010634
	0.18790121	0.09624594	-0.0865264	-0.0126238	0.11497019	-0.0057307
	0.02378313	0.10295142	0.05553147	-0.0193289	-0.0627925	-0.024633
	-0.0403537	0.23566079	0.10335726	0.07325625	0.11329328	0.2555581
5	-0.0694051	-0.0637478	0.2687766=			
	-0.0731941	0.08858298	0.39719725	-0.0709359	0.14039235	0.23244983
	0.06500423	0.11003297	0.0403917	0.02953459	0.26901209	-0.0605089
	0.03036973	0.06836637	0.02345118	0.0206452	-0.0079707	0.20967795
10	0.17097448	-0.007098	-0.0348659	0.09989586	0.07417496	-0.1236805
	0.05442215	0.23686385	0.01979881	-9.80E-06	-0.0549301	0.08891765
	0.08683836	0.14047802	0.00982503	0.11756061	0.09054346	-0.028868
	0.08829379	0.17881326	0.12465772	0.13134554	0.09500015	0.04572553
	0.0749867	0.08564588	0.05334799	0.14341639	0.11468539	0.14277624
15	0.05022619	0.14544216	0.03519877	0.12799838	0.01427337	0.16172577
	0.08078995	-0.0022168	0.05439407	-0.0789278	0.07312368	0.11417327
	0.03405219	0.06140256	0.01802093	0.0954654	0.00130152	-0.035995
	0.11517255	0.17431773	0.09664405	0.01782892	0.03840308	0.05180788
	0.14236264	0.17182963	0.02306779	-0.0489743	-0.0006051	0.19077648
20	-0.0866363	0.11008894	0.40543473=			
	-0.0163019	0.06256609	0.16058824	0.14149499	0.15698175	-0.1197781
	0.38030735	0.28241798	0.2882407	-0.2227429	0.34799534	0.38490915
	0.23144296	-0.3207987	0.56366867	0.35976714	0.20325871	-0.343972
25	0.46158856	0.20649959	0.35099933	-0.5071837	0.56459975	0.21605791
	0.45084599	-0.5829023	0.51297456	0.33494622	0.43086055	-0.5538613
	0.55080342	0.30968052	0.54485208	-0.7155912	0.30799151	0.29871368
	0.36848074	-0.5196409	0.33829662	0.21612473	0.41646513	-0.5573701
	0.47133151	0.30909833	0.37790757	-0.464661	0.50172138	0.21158406
30	0.46017882	-0.5331213	0.60684419	0.47586009	0.28597337	-0.3345993
	0.33042327	0.4072904	0.24270254	-0.3750777	0.14083703	0.30998308
	0.19591335	-0.4028497	0.30585453	0.35896543	0.24851802	-0.2937264
	0.19672842	0.16133355	0.21780767	-0.2419563	0.17847325	0.07593013
	0.1710967	-0.2728708	0.1234024	0.06987085	0.1741322	0.05922241
35	0.03326527	0.22045346	0.98782647=			
	-0.0752053	-0.0571054	-0.1834571	0.14263187	-0.0715346	-0.0524248
	-0.0838031	0.01667063	-0.0945634	-0.1137057	-0.1040308	0.04263301
	-0.2039919	-0.0532526	-0.0828366	0.1373803	-0.0562212	-0.2127942
40	-0.0482095	0.04316666	-0.1732933	0.0550463	-0.0526818	0.06739104
	0.0065265	0.2011867	0.13555			
	-0.0752053	-0.0571054	-0.1834571	0.14263187	-0.0715346	-0.0524248
	-0.0838031	0.01667063	-0.0945634	-0.1137057	-0.1040308	0.04263301
	-0.2039919	-0.0532526	-0.0828366	0.1373803	-0.0562212	-0.2127942
	-0.0482095	0.04316666	-0.1732933	0.0550463	-0.0526818	0.06739104
	0.006					
	-0.0752053	-0.0571054	-0.1834571	0.14263187	-0.0715346	-0.0524248
	-0.0838031	0.01667063	-0.0945634	-0.1137057	-0.1040308	0.04263301
	-0.2039919	-0.0532526	-0.0828366	0.1373803	-0.0562212	-0.2127942
	-0.0482095	0.04316666	-0.1732933	0.0550463	-0.0526818	0.06739104
	0.006					
	-0.0752053	-0.0571054	-0.1834571	0.14263187	-0.0715346	-0.0524248
	-0.0838031	0.01667063	-0.0945634	-0.1137057	-0.1040308	0.04263301
	-0.2039919	-0.0532526	-0.0828366	0.1373803	-0.0562212	-0.2127942
	-0.0482095	0.04316666	-0.1732933	0.0550463	-0.0526818	0.06739104
	0.006					
	-0.0752053	-0.0571054	-0.1834571	0.14263187	-0.0715346	-0.0524248
	-0.0838031	0.01667063	-0.0945634	-0.1137057	-0.1040308	0.04263301
	-0.2039919	-0.0532526	-0.0828366	0.1373803	-0.0562212	-0.2127942
	-0.0482095	0.04316666	-0.1732933	0.0550463	-0.0526818	0.06739104
	0.006					
	-0.0752053	-0.0571054	-0.1834571	0.14263187	-0.0715346	-0.0524248
	-0.0838031	0.01667063	-0.0945634	-0.1137057	-0.1040308	0.04263301
	-0.2039919	-0.0532526	-0.0828366	0.1373803	-0.0562212	-0.2127942
	-0.0482095	0.04316666	-0.1732933	0.0550463	-0.0526818	0.06739104
	0.006					
	-0.0752053	-0.0571054	-0.1834571	0.14263187	-0.0715346	-0.0524248
	-0.0838031	0.01667063	-0.0945634	-0.1137057	-0.1040308	0.04263301
	-0.2039919	-0.0532526	-0.0828366	0.1373803	-0.0562212	-0.2127942
	-0.0482095	0.04316666	-0.1732933	0.0550463	-0.0526818	0.06739104
	0.006					
	-0.0752053	-0.0571054	-0.1834571	0.14263187	-0.0715346	-0.0524248
	-0.0838031	0.01667063	-0.0945634	-0.1137057	-0.1040308	0.04263301
	-0.2039919	-0.0532526	-0.0828366	0.1373803	-0.0562212	-0.2127942
	-0.0482095	0.04316666	-0.1732933	0.0550463	-0.0526818	0.06739104
	0.006					
	-0.0752053	-0.0571054	-0.1834571	0.14263187	-0.0715346	-0.0524248
	-0.0838031	0.01667063	-0.0945634	-0.1137057	-0.1040308	0.04263301
	-0.2039919	-0.0532526	-0.0828366	0.1373803	-0.0562212	-0.2127942
	-0.0482095	0.04316666	-0.1732933	0.0550463	-0.0526818	0.06739104
	0.006					
	-0.0752053	-0.0571054	-0.1834571	0.14263187	-0.0715346	-0.0524248
	-0.0838031	0.01667063	-0.0945634	-0.1137057	-0.1040308	0.04263301
	-0.2039919	-0.0532526	-0.0828366	0.1373803	-0.0562212	-0.2127942
	-0.0482095	0.04316666	-0.1732933	0.0550463	-0.0526818	0.06739104
	0.006					
	-0.0752053	-0.0571054	-0.1834571	0.14263187	-0.0715346	-0.0524248
	-0.0838031	0.01667063	-0.0945634	-0.1137057	-0.1040308	0.04263301
	-0.2039919	-0.0532526	-0.0828366	0.1373803	-0.0562212	-0.2127942
	-0.0482095	0.04316666	-0.1732933	0.0550463	-0.0526818	0.06739104
	0.006					
	-0.0752053	-0.0571054	-0.1834571	0.14263187	-0.0715346	-0.0524248
	-0.0838031	0.01667063	-0.0945634	-0.1137057	-0.1040308	0.04263301
	-0.2039919	-0.0532526	-0.0828366	0.1373803	-0.0562212	-0.2127942
	-0.0482095	0.04316666	-0.1732933	0.0550463	-0.0526818	0.06739104
	0.006					
	-0.0752053	-0.0571054	-0.1834571	0.14263187	-0.0715346	-0.0524248
	-0.0838031	0.01667063	-0.0945634	-0.1137057	-0.1040308	0.04263301
	-0.2039919	-0.0532526	-0.0828366	0.1373803	-0.0562212	-0.2127942
	-0.0482095	0.04316666	-0.1732933	0.0550463	-0.0526818	0.06739104
	0.006					
	-0.0752053	-0.0571054	-0.1834571	0.14263187	-0.0715346	-0.0524248
	-0.0838031	0.01667063	-0.0945634	-0.1137057	-0.1040308	0.04263301
	-0.2039919	-0.0532526	-0.0828366	0.1373803	-0.0562212	-0.2127942
	-0.0482095	0.04316666	-0.1732933	0.0550463	-0.0526818	0.06739104
	0.006					
	-0.0752053	-0.0571054	-0.1834571	0.14263187	-0.0715346	-0.0524248
	-0.0838031	0.01667063	-0.0945634	-0.1137057	-0.1040308	0.04263301
	-0.2039919	-0.0532526	-0.0828366	0.1373803	-0.0562212	-0.2127942
	-0.0482095	0.04316666	-0.1732933	0.0550463	-0.0526818	0.06739104
	0.006					
	-0.0752053	-0.0571054	-0.1834571	0.14263187	-0.0715346	-0.0524248
	-0.0838031	0.01667063	-0.0945634	-0.1137057	-0.1040308	0.04263301
	-0.2039919	-0.0532526	-0.0828366	0.1373803	-0.0562212	-0.2127942
	-0.0482095	0.04316666	-0.1732933	0.0550463	-0.0526818	0.06739104
	0.006					
	-0.0752053	-0.0571054	-0.1834571	0.14263187	-0.0715346	-0.0524248
	-0.0838031	0.01667063	-0.0945634	-0.1137057	-0.1040308	0.04263301
	-0.2039919	-0.0532526	-0.0828366	0.1373803	-0.0562212	-0.2127942
	-0.0482095	0.04316666	-0.1732933	0.0550463	-0.0526818	0.06739104
	0.006					
	-0.0752053	-0.0571054	-0.1834571	0.14263187	-0.0715346	-0.0524248
	-0.0838031	0.01667063	-0.0945634	-0.1137057	-0.1040308	0.04263301
	-0.2039919	-0.0532526	-0.0828366	0.1373803	-0.0562212	-0.2127942
	-0.0482095	0.04316666	-0.1732933	0.0550463	-0.0526818	0.06739104
	0.006					
	-0.0752053	-0.0571054	-0.1834571	0.14263187	-0.0715346	-0.0524248
	-0.0838031	0.01667063	-0.0945634	-0.1137057	-0.1040308	0.04263301
	-0.2039919	-0.0532526	-0.0828366	0.1373803	-0.0562212	-0.2127942
	-0.0482095	0.04316666	-0.1732933	0.0550463	-0.0526818	0.06739104
	0.006					
	-0.0752053	-0.0571054	-0.1834571	0.14263187	-0.0715346	-0.0524248
	-0.0838031	0.01667063	-0.0945634	-0.1137057	-0.1040308	0.04263301
	-0.2039919	-0.0532526	-0.0828366	0.1373803	-0.0562212	-0.2127942
	-0.0482095	0.04316666	-0.1732933	0.0550463	-0.0526818	0.06739104
	0.006					
	-0.0752053	-0.0571054	-0.1834571	0.14263187	-0.0715346	-0.0524248
	-0.0838031	0.01667063	-0.0945634	-0.1137057	-0.1040308	0.04263301
	-0.2039919	-0.0532526	-0.0828366	0.1373803	-0.0562212	-0.2127942
	-0.0482095	0.0431666				

117

[illegible]

118

	-0.158326	-0.0149114	-0.1479269=			
	0.11429903	-0.0432327	0.14520219	0.51860482	0.19151463	-0.1127352
	0.33529782	0.24581231	0.07311282	-0.2268714	0.31717882	0.35736522
5	0.09062219	-0.2974442	0.46336258	0.17145836	0.32802406	-0.3898261
	0.49959001	0.22195752	0.32254469	-0.4994924	0.75497276	0.35112098
	0.52447188	-0.5555881	0.68481833	0.20251468	0.39860719	-0.7198414
	0.78773916	0.45518181	0.71273196	-0.7655811	0.7155844	0.39701831
	0.47296903	-0.672706	0.69020337	0.37193877	0.47959387	-0.9032337
10	0.80210346	0.40167108	0.50383294	-0.6195157	0.80366057	0.3884458
	0.45408139	-0.7316507	0.48975253	0.47984859	0.33738744	-0.5510914
	0.56882453	0.29653791	0.4472059	-0.5177853	0.36228263	0.40129057
	0.4490836	-0.4754149	0.46366793	0.31378582	0.48470935	-0.2453159
	0.39600489	0.24787127	0.20359448	-0.203447	0.25734761	0.17168433
15	0.35209069	-0.203685	0.25115264	0.21313109	0.12461348	0.10632347
	0.13266218	0.20236486	1.1078833=			
	-0.0112394	0.01601524	0.11363719	-0.1440069	0.05522444	-0.0711868
	0.09505147	-0.0220034	0.0714381	-0.1994763	0.12304886	-0.1611445
20	0.16811867	-0.4498019	0.10313182	-0.0149997	0.47659361	-0.4639786
	-0.0380792	-0.0468904	0.37975076	-0.7120748	-0.1078557	0.10635795
	0.42699403	-0.6348544	0.00025528	0.06202703	0.57867163	-0.6733171
	-0.0381787	0.09532065	0.50065184	-0.7413587	-0.0193744	-0.1180785
	0.74187845	-0.8996705	0.03180836	0.04010354	0.82366729	-0.6429569
25	0.02410492	-0.0632124	0.73732454	-0.8188882	0.04538922	-0.1471086
	0.7597335	-0.6287012	0.03615654	-0.1248241	0.56647652	-0.6294683
	0.15992545	-0.1780757	0.3820785	-0.5642462	-0.0609947	-0.0350918
	0.25537059	-0.4526066	-0.0761788	-0.0242514	0.35473567	-0.3512402
	-0.1888455	0.1974159	0.01620384	-0.1306533	-0.1468564	0.25235301
30	0.08058657	-0.0768841	-0.316401	0.09779498	0.08537519	-0.0738487
	-0.2839164	0.12684187	-0.2450078=			
	-0.1147067	-0.0084124	-0.5239977	-0.5021591	0.02636886	0.1470097
	-0.5139894	-0.6221746	-0.3979228	0.30136263	-0.742976	-0.4011821
35	0.19038832	0.55414283	-1.1652025	-0.3686967	-0.4750175	0.54713631
	-0.9312411	-0.410718	-0.1498093	0.55332947	-1.0870041	-0.4378341
	-0.5433689	0.92539561	-0.9013531	-0.6145319	-0.5512772	1.0310978
	-0.9422795	-0.6914638	-0.7839714	1.4393494	-0.7092296	-0.894987
	-0.6896155	1.1251011	-0.8161536	-0.8204682	-0.8957642	1.3315079
40	-1.0231192	-0.5556009	-0.7499282	1.281976	0.9347371	0.6562011
	-0.043896	0.128982	0.462286	0.8311081	-0.4240301	0.1167478
	-0.7735854	0.3031097	-0.4083092	-0.0152685	-0.2330878	-0.5839304
45	-0.1544528	0.2042688	-0.8989772	-0.3088974	-0.2014994	0.11505035
	-0.4815812	-0.5319371	-1.3798244=			

119

	0.07143499	-0.1589592	0.04816094	-0.0301291	0.15144217	-0.3037405
	0.1549352	-0.0608833	0.21059546	-0.4705076	0.16360784	-0.0684895
	0.44703272	-0.6194252	0.19459446	-0.0523894	0.31194624	-0.8030509
	0.2595928	-0.119705	0.4913742	-0.8455008	0.15694356	-0.0023983
5	0.53066176	-0.9705743	0.1324198	0.08982921	0.43900672	-0.8588745
	0.1702383	0.02221953	0.44412452	-0.7700244	0.10496679	0.14137991
	0.5403164	-0.5077381	0.00849557	0.1611405	0.31764683	-0.5240273
	-0.092208	0.21902563	0.25788471	-0.3861519	-0.2022993	0.13711917
	0.22238699	-0.156256	-0.2092034	0.16458821	0.20111787	-0.1418906
10	-0.180493	0.17164391	0.15690604	-0.0254563	-0.1990184	0.10211211
	0.17421109	-0.0730809	-0.3717274	0.1436436	-0.0215865	-0.2363243
	-0.1982318	0.06996673	0.19735655	0.05625506	-0.241524	0.12768924
	0.05979542	-0.0623277	-0.2521037	0.0944353	-0.0492548	0.05238663
	-0.1978694	0.05119598	-0.2067173=			
15	0.06230025	-0.0752745	0.32974288	0.00985043	0.07881941	-0.0835249
	0.1073643	-0.090154	-0.0938452	0.00704324	0.2569764	0.08700065
	-0.0272076	-0.1014201	0.19723812	-0.0935401	0.0913924	-0.0728388
	0.33091745	-0.0610701	0.01335303	0.02156818	0.21619918	-0.0909865
20	0.01069087	0.02569587	0.11676744	-0.0213131	0.1322203	0.11848255
	0.11231339	-0.0392407	0.06117272	-0.0234323	0.14693312	0.13509636
	-0.0213237	-0.0261696	0.09474246	-0.0100756	0.10580003	-0.0147534
	0.12980145	-0.038394	0.08167668	-0.0105376	0.02142166	-0.0161705
	0.15833771	0.01835199	0.04420554	0.02605363	0.27427858	0.05774866
25	-0.0696303	0.03802699	0.0806741	0.03993953	-0.0121658	0.07568218
	0.05538817	0.01067943	0.04131892	-0.0267609	0.14418064	0.0897231
	-0.0677462	-0.0772208	0.16641215	0.09142463	0.02115551	-0.0876383
	0.14652038	0.06084725	-0.1150111	-0.0687876	0.10878915	0.32776353
	-0.1929855	0.00694158	0.26604816=			
30	-0.0786668	0.05454836	-0.0834711	0.07707115	0.05659099	-0.0285798
	-0.0029815	-0.0837616	0.02468397	0.03531792	-0.1437671	0.10122854
	-0.1259448	-0.0845026	0.10171869	-0.0541042	0.05257236	0.04065102
	-0.1091328	0.0090488	0.06142418	-0.167912	-0.098868	0.02574896
35	0.00333312	-0.2812204	0.02039073	-0.052828	-0.0439769	-0.0458286
	0.14768517	0.02989549	0.09454407	-0.1860176	-0.0505908	0.088718
	0.0611263	-0.1895157	0.08583955	0.09382812	-0.0001466	-0.4065202
	0.09951859	0.14843601	0.12351749	-0.1327625	0.10949049	0.07129322
	0.05554885	-0.3743193	-0.0205463	0.12675567	0.0775801	-0.1869074
40	0.01806534	0.09599103	-0.0570596	-0.1523381	0.08384241	0.00704122
	0.10942505	-0.0473638	0.01151760	0.09727710	0.04433	0.0629771
	0.0473638	0.06086259	0.1788069			
45	0.19904579	-0.2001437	0.04977471	0.26628217	0.19910193	0.15184447
	0.01703933	0.06875326	0.09066898	-0.2003548	0.26507998	0.0629771

120

	0.39202845	-0.6033413	0.57940209	-0.0460919	0.53419203	-0.7680888
	0.65535748	0.32430753	0.64831889	-1.0950515	0.80829531	0.05049393
	0.95144385	-1.2075449	0.94851351	-0.0852669	0.94320357	-1.680338
	0.99852085	0.48870567	1.7470727	-1.7586045	0.56886804	0.66196042
5	1.2572207	-1.5854638	0.89351815	0.39586932	1.586942	-1.6365775
	0.73526824	0.31977594	1.2270083	-1.2818555	0.71813524	0.37488377
	0.95438999	-1.2543333	0.55854511	0.1672449	0.56084049	-0.7980669
	0.45917389	0.27823627	0.26928344	-0.9804664	0.62299174	0.53984308
	0.33946255	-0.5412283	0.1085042	0.44658452	0.39120093	-0.5676367
10	0.19083619	0.37056214	0.24114503	-0.3020035	0.39015424	0.09788869
	0.30190364	-0.3655235	0.33355939	0.44246852	0.17172456	-0.3479928
	0.18584418	0.34009755	4.5490937=			
	0.13698889	-0.0798945	0.3366704	0.17313539	0.01228174	-0.2679709
15	0.31540671	0.08274947	0.11212139	-0.428847	0.57447821	-0.0305296
	0.00119518	-0.1978176	0.59532708	-0.0309942	-0.0107875	-0.7312108
	0.74023747	0.38564634	0.03748908	-0.6475483	0.87958473	0.05327692
	0.06987014	-0.5168169	1.0081589	-0.0517421	0.08651814	-0.761238
	0.7840901	0.4372991	0.13783893	-0.8574924	0.90612286	0.06334394
20	0.05702339	-0.5161278	0.66693234	-0.0496743	0.07689167	-0.5775976
	0.70519674	0.15731441	0.08724558	-0.7325026	0.65517086	0.29064488
	0.11747536	-0.612968	0.98160452	0.02407174	0.02613025	-0.677594
	0.81293154	0.18651071	0.03182137	-0.7051651	0.89682412	0.181806
	0.24770954	-0.4320194	0.72470272	0.12951751	0.14626819	-0.3964331
25	0.54755467	0.08819038	0.22105552	-0.3489864	0.4620938	0.06516677
	0.03049339	-0.1913544	0.4782092	-0.098419	-0.0160188	0.07177288
	0.1008145	0.01412579	0.42727205=			
	-0.0048454	0.1204864	0.15507312	0.25648347	0.03982652	0.14641231
30	-0.0273505	0.10494121	0.1988914	0.09454013	-0.0560908	0.07466536
	0.1325469	0.15324508	-0.01398	0.08281901	0.07909692	0.36858437
	-0.0007111	0.13285491	-0.1658676	0.25348473	0.08835109	0.16466415
	-0.118853	0.26435438	-0.0775707	0.09143513	-0.1019902	0.29236633
	0.07947435	0.07329605	-0.0903666	0.10754076	0.04456592	0.18368921
35	-0.162177	0.18712705	0.03216886	0.04698242	-0.0385783	0.2276271
	0.04106503	0.08498254	-0.0325038	0.29328787	0.01249749	0.10016124
	-0.0012895	0.2371086	0.14713244	-0.053306	-0.0808243	0.28909287
	0.13412228	0.10756335	-0.0486093	0.05799349	0.21323961	-0.0118695
	-0.142963	0.09792294	0.06907349	0.05942665	-0.143813	0.21673524
40	0.19903891	0.02989559	0.15750381	-0.0373194	0.12471988	0.10462648
	0.0027457	0.06615	0.1597161	0.18050906	0.1232446	0.27883759
	0.04679342	0.10158926	-0.122116	0.23491009	-0.0625733	0.19985424
45	-0.1704439	0.302394	-0.0671487	0.33251444	-0.0581705	0.21095584
	-0.215752	0.32740423	0.1597161	0.18050906	0.1232446	0.2

			122		
	-0.0395793	0.03069885	0.07913893	-0.1470363	0.09080192
	-0.0917266	-0.2185763	0.04743406	-0.0364127	0.00991712
	0.23327024	-0.0898143	-0.0578982	-0.2096201	0.09257686
	0.10926479	-0.1167006	0.18223672	0.09710353	0.03838636
5	0.12219627	0.05705986	-0.0505442	-0.1334345	-0.0204458
	-0.1091286	-0.075133	0.02949276	-0.0217044	-0.0782921
	-0.0210903	0.11607172	-0.0943146	-0.1014408	0.02903902
	-0.1233738	-0.0760847	0.00098273	0.07522969	0.05794976
	0.06584878	-0.0323083	-0.0581293=		
10	-----				

Table 4. Second neural net weighting matrix (2 x 21) (weights_2).

15	-0.5675537	-0.6119734	0.20069507	0.26132998	-0.5071653	0.2793434
	-0.5328685	0.31165671	-0.9999997	-0.4128213	-1.0000007	-0.6456627
	-0.209518	1.6362301	-1.9999975	-0.2563241	0.04389827	1.7597554
	2.0453076	0.08412334	-0.1645829=			
20	0.55343837	0.68506879	-1.1869608	0.39551663	0.38050765	0.40832204
	0.12712023	-1.7462951	0.0818732	6.111361	0.62210494	0.42921746
	0.19891988	-4.0000067	-0.5605077	1.3601962	1.7318885	-1.0558798
	3.1242371	0.22860088	1.6726165=			

25 E) Code for running the net.

Code for running the neural net is provided below in Table 5 (neural_n.c) and Table 6 (lin_alg.c).

Table 5. Code for running the neural net (neural_n.c).

```

30 -----
#define local far
#include <windows.h>
#include <alloc.h>
#include "utils.h"
35 #include <string.h>
#include <ctype.h>
#include <stdio.h>
#include <math.h>

#include "chipwin.h"
#include "lin_alg.h"

void reportProblem( char local * message, short errorClass);
15 char iniFileName[] = "designer.ini";

```


123

```

static void sigmoid( vector local * transformMe ){
    short i;
    for( i = 0; i < transformMe->size; i++ )
        transformMe->values[i] = 1/(1+ exp(-1 * transformMe->values[i]));
5    }

static short getNumCols(char far * buffer){
    short count = 1;
    for( ; *buffer != 0; buffer++ )
10        if( *buffer == '\t' ) count++;
    return count;
}

static short getNumRows(char far * buffer){
15    char far * last, far * current;
    short count = -1;
    current = buffer;
    do{
        count++;
20        last = current;
        current = strchr( last+1, 0 );
    } while( current > last+1 );
    return count;
}
25

static void readMatrix( matrix local * theMat, char far * buffer ){
    short ij;
    char far * temp;
    temp = buffer;
30

    for( i = 0; i < theMat->numRows; i++ ){
        for( j = 0; j < theMat->numCols; j++ ){
            while( isspace( *temp ) || (*temp == 0 && *(temp-1) != 0) ) = temp++;
            sscanf( temp, "%f", &theMat->values[i][j]);
35            while( !isspace( *temp ) && *temp != 0 ) temp++;
        }
    }

}

40 #define MaxNumLines (20)
#define MaxLineSize (100)

// ... (lines 45-50) ...

char far * buffer;
int copiedLength;
short numCols, numRows;

```

```

124
    buffer = farcalloc( MaxNumLines * MaxLineSize, sizeof( char ) );
    if (buffer == NULL) { errorHwnd( "failed to allocate file reading = buffer"); return
FALSE;}
    copiedLength = GetPrivateProfileString("weights_1", NULL, "\\0\\0", buffer,
5    MaxNumLines * MaxLineSize, iniFileName);
    if( copiedLength < 10 || copiedLength >= (MaxNumLines * MaxLineSize =
-10)){
        errorHwnd("failed to read .ini file"); return FALSE;
    }
10    numCols = getNumCols( buffer );
    numRows = getNumRows( buffer );
    if( !allocateMatrix( weights1, numRows, numCols )) return FALSE;
    readMatrix( weights1, buffer );

15    copiedLength = GetPrivateProfileString("weights_2", NULL, "\\0\\0", buffer,
    MaxNumLines * MaxLineSize, iniFileName);
    if( copiedLength < 10 || copiedLength >= (MaxNumLines * MaxLineSize
-10)){
        errorHwnd("failed to read .ini file");
20        farfree( buffer );
        return FALSE;
    }
    numCols = getNumCols( buffer );
    numRows = getNumRows( buffer );
25    if( !allocateMatrix( weights2, numRows, numCols )){ farfree( buffer ); return
FALSE; }
    readMatrix( weights2, buffer );
    farfree( buffer );
    return TRUE;
30 }

short runForward( vector local *input, vector local *output,
                    matrix local *weights1, matrix local
                    *weights2){
35    vector hiddenLayer;
    if( !allocateVector( &hiddenLayer, (short)(weights1->numRows +1) )) return
FALSE;
    if( ! vectorTimesMatrix( input, &hiddenLayer, weights1 ) ){
        freeVector( &hiddenLayer ); return FALSE;
40    }

    // hidden layer values = hiddenLayer
    vectorTimesMatrix( &hiddenLayer, output, weights2 );
    freeVector( &hiddenLayer ); return FALSE;
45 }
    freeVector( &hiddenLayer );
    sigmoids( output );

```

125

```

        return TRUE;
    }

    static vector inputVector= {NULL, 0}, outputVector = {NULL, 0}; static matrix
5    firstWeights = {NULL, 0, 0} , secondWeights = {NULL, 0, 0};

    static short beenHereDoneThis = FALSE;

    static short makeSureNetIsSetUp( void ){
10        if( beenHereDoneThis ) return TRUE;
        if( !readNeuralNetWeights( &firstWeights, &secondWeights )) return = FALSE;
        if( !allocateVector( &inputVector, firstWeights.numCols )) return = FALSE;
        if( !allocateVector( &outputVector, secondWeights.numRows )) return = FALSE;

15        beenHereDoneThis = TRUE;
        return TRUE;
    }

    void removeNetFromMemory( void ) {
20        freeVector( &inputVector ); freeVector( &outputVector );
        freeMatrix( &firstWeights ); freeMatrix( &secondWeights );
        beenHereDoneThis = FALSE;
    }

25    short nnEstimateHybAndXHyb( float local * hyb, float local * xHyb, char = local *
    probe){
        short probeLength, i;

        if( !makeSureNetIsSetUp()) return FALSE;
30        probeLength = (short)(strlen( probe ));
        if( (probeLength * 4 + 1) != inputVector.size ){
            // reportProblem("Neural net not set up to deal with probes of this = length", 0);
            if( (probeLength * 4 + 1) > inputVector.size ){
                // reportProblem( "probe being trimmed to do annlysis", 1);
35                probeLength = (short)(inputVector.size / 4);
            }
        }
        memset( inputVector.values, 0, inputVector.size * sizeof( float));
        inputVector.values[inputVector.size-1] = 1;
40        for( i = 0; i < probeLength; i++ )
            inputVector.values[i] * = 1;

        // ... (faded code) ...

        xHyb = outputVector.values[i];
45        return TRUE;
    }

```

126

Table 6. Code for running the neural net (lin_alg.c).

```

lin_alg.c
5  #include "utils.h"
   #include "lin_alg.h"
   #include <alloc.h>

short allocateMatrix( matrix local * theMat, short rows, short columns){
10     short i;
       theMat->values = calloc( rows, sizeof( float local * ));
       if( theMat->values == NULL ){ errorHwnd( "failed to allocate = matrix"); return
FALSE;}
       for( i = 0; i < rows; i++){
15           theMat->values[i] = calloc( columns, sizeof( float) );
           if( theMat->values[i] == NULL ){
               errorHwnd( "failed to allocate matrix");
               for( --i; i >= 0; i-- )
                   free( theMat->values[i] );
20           return FALSE;
       }
       }
       theMat->numRows = rows; theMat->numCols = columns;
       return TRUE;
25 } short allocateVector( vector local * theVec, short columns){
       theVec->values = calloc( columns, sizeof( float));
       if( theVec->values == NULL ) { errorHwnd( " faile to allocate = vector"); return
FALSE;}
       theVec->size = columns;
30       return TRUE;
   }
   void freeVector( vector local * theVec ){
       free( theVec->values );
       theVec->values = NULL;
35       theVec->size = 0;
   }

   void freeMatrix( matrix local * theMat){
       short i;
40       for( i = 0; i < theMat->numRows; i++){
           free( theMat->values[i] );
           theMat->values[i] = NULL;
       }
       theMat->numRows = theMat->numCols = 0;
45   }

```

```

127
float vDot( float local * input1, float local * input2, short size ){
    float returnValue = 0;
    short i;
    for( i = 0; i < size; i++)
5       returnValue += input1[i] * input2[i];
    return returnValue;
}

10 short vectorTimesMatrix( vector local *input, vector local *output,
                           matrix local *mat ){
    short i;
    if( (input->size != mat->numCols) || (output->size < mat->numRows) ){
        errorHwnd( "illegal multiply" );
        return FALSE;
15    }
    for( i = 0; i < mat->numRows; i++ )
        output->values[i] = vDot( input->values, mat->values[i], input->size =
20    );
    return TRUE;
}

```

Example 7

Generic Difference Screening

25 High density arrays comprising arbitrary (haphazard) probe oligonucleotides for generic difference screening were produced by shuffling (randomizing) the masks used in light-directed polymer synthesis. The resulting arrays contained more than 34,000 pairs of 25 mer arbitrary probe oligonucleotides. The oligonucleotides in each pair differed by a single nucleotide at position 13.

30 After hybridization, washing, staining, and scanning as described above, data files (containing information regarding probe identity and hybridization intensity) were created.

Differences in intensity between the two oligonucleotides comprising each probe pair K (where K ranges from 1 to 34,320) were calculated as follows:

$$X_{ijk1} - X_{ijk2}$$

created a

$$X_{ijk1} - X_{ijk2}$$

128

where X is the hybridization intensity, i indicates which sample (in this case sample 1 or 2), and j indicates which replicate (in this case replicate 1 or two for each sample), and K is the probe pair (in this case 1 . . . 34,320), and 1 indicates one member of the probe pair, while 2 indicates the other member of the probe pair.

5 Figures 16a and 16b and 16c illustrate the differences between replicate 1 and 2 of sample 1 (Fig. 16a, the normal cell line) and between replicate 1 and replicate 2 of sample 2 (Fig. 16b, the tumor cell line) for each probe. Thus, Fig. 16a plots the value of $(X_{11k1} - X_{11k2}) - (X_{12k1} - X_{12k2})$ for $k=1$ to 34,320 on the vertical axis and K on the horizontal axis. The two replicates were normalized based on the average ratio of $(X_{11k1} - X_{11k2}) / (X_{12k1} - X_{12k2})$ for all probe pairs (*i.e.*, after normalization, the average ratio should approximate 1).
 10 Similarly, Fig. 15b plots the value of $(X_{21k1} - X_{21k2}) - (X_{22k1} - X_{22k2})$ after normalization between the two replicates based on the average ratio of $(X_{21k1} - X_{21k2}) / (X_{22k1} - X_{22k2})$. Figure 16c plots the differences between sample 1 and 2 averaged over the two replicates. This value is calculated as $((X_{21k1} + X_{22k2}) / 2) - ((X_{11k1} + X_{12k2}) / 2)$ after normalization between the two
 15 samples based on the average ratio of $[(X_{21k1} + X_{22k2}) / 2] / [(X_{11k1} + X_{12k2}) / 2]$.

 Figures 17a, 17b, and 17c show the data filtered. Figure 16a shows the relative change in hybridization intensities of replicate 1 and 2 of sample 1 for the difference of each oligonucleotide pair. After normalization between replicates (see above), the ratio is calculated as follows: If the absolute value of $(X_{11k1} - X_{11k2}) / (X_{12k1} - X_{12k2})$
 20 > 1 , then the ratio $= (X_{11k1} - X_{11k2}) / (X_{12k1} - X_{12k2})$ else the ratio $= (X_{12k1} - X_{12k2}) / (X_{11k1} - X_{11k2})$ (the inverse). The ratio of replicate 1 and 2 of sample 2 for the difference of each oligonucleotide pair, normalized, filtered, and plotted the same way as in Figure 17a is shown in Fig. 17b. The ratio is calculated as in Fig. 17a, but based on the absolute value of $(X_{21k1} - X_{21k2}) / (X_{22k1} - X_{22k2})$ and $(X_{22k1} - X_{22k2}) / (X_{21k1} - X_{21k2})$. Fig. 17c shows the ratio of
 25 sample 1 and sample 2 averaged over two replicates for the difference of each oligonucleotide pair. The ratio is calculated as in Fig. 17a, but based on the absolute value of $[(X_{21k1} + X_{22k2}) / 2] / [(X_{11k1} + X_{12k2}) / 2]$ and $[(X_{11k1} + X_{12k2}) / 2] / [(X_{21k1} + X_{22k2}) / 2]$ after

 oligonucleotide pairs that show the greatest differential hybridization between the two samples can be identified by sorting the observed hybridization ratio and difference values. The oligonucleotides that show the largest change (increase or decrease)

129
can be readily seen from the ratio plot of samples 1 and 2 (Fig. 17c). These differences do not appear to be in the background noise. Based on the identified oligonucleotide pair sequences, a gene or EST with the suspected sequence tag can be searched for in the sequence databases, such as GENBANK, to determine whether the gene has been cloned and characterized. If the search is negative, appropriate primers can be made to obtain the cDNA or part of the cDNA directly from mRNA, cDNA, or from a cDNA library.

From Figures 16a and 16b, it is observed that several oligonucleotide pairs show large differences between two replicates for the same sample. It is believed that this results from differential expression in a given tissue. These oligonucleotide pairs detect genes that are likely highly expressed, so the deviation of replicates for these pairs are larger than those oligonucleotide pairs that bind to nucleotides expressed at low levels (*i.e.*, the standard deviation of the mean is proportional to the mean). That is also why the relative change between two samples is a better indicator to detect the differential expression between two samples (*see* Fig. 17c). In order to determine which oligonucleotide pairs are of greatest interest, the absolute and relative difference measures could be combined into a scoring function.

Increasing the number of related oligonucleotide pairs (increased redundancy) and employment of two-color hybridization/detection schemes is expected to help reduce the background variation. This allows more sensitive detection of small differences and decreases the noise and occurrence of false positives. The 25 mer array used in this example is a small subset of all possible 25 mers, thus, increasing the total number of oligonucleotide pairs will greatly increase the ability to detect changes in genes of unknown sequences by allowing more complete coverage of the available sequence space.

Example 8

Nucleic Acid End Labeling

Fragmented RNA was ligated to a 5' end-labeled poly(A) tail. The poly(A) tail was synthesized by head in the presence of Mg²⁺ and ATP. The poly(A) tail (deoxyribonucleic acid to the poly(A) labeled with either fluorescein or biotin at the 5' end was then ligated to the fragmented RNA using RNA ligase under standard conditions

130

The labeling appeared to be efficient and the hybridization pattern obtained using the labeled RNA as a probe was similar to one obtained using RNA that was labeled during an *in vitro* transcription step.

5

Example 9

Quantification of Labeling Efficiency

Quantification of the labeling efficiency is accomplished by spiking experiments in which specific full-length unfragmented RNA species are spiked into the total mRNA pool at different concentrations prior to the end-labeling procedure. The relative concentrations of the spiked RNA in the pool can then be measured by hybridization to a high density array of target oligonucleotides prepared as described above. This permits evaluation of the ability to detect particular RNA species at low concentration in the mRNA pool.

15

Example 10

PCR Labeling of Nucleic Acids

Polymerase Chain Reaction (PCR)

20 μ l PCR reactions substituted with 10% biotin-dUTP were conducted and the quantity of each PCR product was estimated with gel analysis. Approximately 250 fmoles of each PCR product was pooled. A Pharmacia S300 sephacryl column (cat # 27-5130-01) was prepared with a 1 minute prespin at 3000 x g followed with a 200 μ l H₂O wash and spin at 3000 x g for 1 more minute. The pooled PCR product was loaded and spun for 2 minutes at 3000 x g.

The column was discarded and the eluate was speed vacuumed to dryness.

25

30 Dupont End Labeling Kit (cat # NLL824) 2.5 μ l CoCl₂ and 12.5 μ l TdT buffer were added. Gibco BRL DNase 1 was diluted to 0.25 U/ μ l using 10 mM Tris pH 8. 1 μ l of

13/
diluted DNase was added to PCR product pool and incubated for 6 minutes at 37°C, denatured for 10 minutes at 99°C, and cooled to 4°C. The total volume was 29 µl.

Terminal Transferase (TdT) Labeling

- 5 To the fragmented PCR pool, 2 µl of TdT enzyme (from NEN kit 2 U/µl stock) was added and 4 µl NEN kit biotin-ddATP was then added. The final volume was 35 µl. and was incubated at 37°C for 1.5 hr.

Hybridization

- 10 The 35 µl labeled target was split into two 17.5 µl aliquots, one for a coding chip (GeneChip containing sense-strand sequences and permutations thereof) and one for the non-coding (antisense) chip. 182.5 µl of 2.5 M TMACl (Sigma 5 M stock diluted 1:2 using 10 mM Tris pH 8) was added. Triton X-100 was added to a final concentration of 0.001%. In certain experiments, 4 µl of 100 nM control
15 oligonucleotide was added to the solution rather than at the stain step.

 The mixture was denatured at 95°C for 5 minutes, added directly to the chip cartridge and hybridized with mixing at 37°C for 60 minutes.

Staining and Washing

- 20 The hybridization solution was removed from the flow cell used in the GeneChip system (Affymetrix, Inc., Santa Clara, CA) and the chamber was manually rinsed with 3 X with 6X SSPE /0.001% Triton X-100 to remove TMACl.

- A phycoerythrin stain solution was prepared as follows: 190 µl 6X SSPE/0.001% Triton X-100 + 10 µl of 20 mg/ml acetylated BSA + 0.4 µl stock
25 phycoerythrin (Molecular Probes Cat # S866) + 4 µl fluorescein control oligo 100 nM stock.

 The staining solution was added to the flow cell with mixing at room

 The chip was washed on hybridization station (the GeneChip system, Affymetrix, Inc.) using 6X SSPE/0.001% Triton X-100 at 35°C. 9 fill/drain changes

of fresh wash solution were used and scanning took place in this buffer. Target sequences were accurately identified in this experiment.

Example 11

End Labeling PCR Product

5 PCR product was fragmented and end labeled using TdT from Boehringer Mannheim. After the PCR amplification, 5 μ l of a 50 μ l PCR reaction was run on a 1% agarose gel to estimate total yield of the amplification reaction. To fragment the DNA, the remaining 45 μ l of solution was combined with DNase I (diluted in H₂O to a final concentration of 5 U DNase I/ μ g DNA) and reacted for 10 minutes at 31 °C. The DNase was then heat killed for 10 minutes at 95°C. The fragmented DNA solution was then held at 4°C until ready for the terminal transferase reaction.

The terminal transferase reaction mixture consisted of the fragmented PCR sample, 20 μ L 5X terminal transferase reaction buffer, 6 μ l 25 mM CoCl₂ (final concentration 1.5 mM), 1 μ l of fluorescent dideoxynucleotide triphosphates (ddNTP final concentration 10 μ M) and 2 μ L of Boehringer Mannheim terminal transferase (TdT, final concentration 50 U/reaction), and H₂O up to 100 μ l volume.

The reaction was incubated for 30 minutes at 37°C. The whole reaction volume was then transferred to a 1.7 ml tube, brought up to 500 μ l with 5X SSPE, 0.05% Triton hyb and scanned normally.

20 Protocols for the 50 μ L PCR reaction are found in the instructional materials accompanying the GeneChip™ HIV PRT Assay (Affymetrix, Sunnyvale, CA).

25

Example 12

certain fragment end labeling experiments, the accuracy of base calling in a GeneChip system was improved when calf intestinal alkaline phosphatase (CAIP) was used during fragmentation with DNase. See Figure 18.

30

13.3

CIAP is useful in degrading any nucleotides that were not incorporated in any previous amplification, transcription, and polymerase other polymerase reactions. Such degradation prevents the incorporation of those nucleotides in subsequent reactions, such as tailing and labeling reactions for example.

5

Example 13.

Post-Hybridization End Labeling

Post-hybridization end labeling experiments were performed. After hybridization of a target to a probe array in the GeneChip system, the targets were labeled using terminal transferase (shown as TdTase) as shown in Figure 19.

Post-hybridization labeling was shown to yield better results when the probe array (Chip) was pre-reacted as shown in Figures 20 and 21.

Figure 21 also shows the results of a DNase titrations experiment.

The various titration experiments are shown below in Table 7.

Table 7. Hybridization TdTase end labeling call accuracy. Accuracy is based on Ratio = 1.2 of maximum to next highest calculated intensities. Calculated intensities = minimum of A, C, G, or T in tile set subtracted from adjusted intensity. Adjusted intensity = raw intensity of PCR - raw intensity of no PCR.

Experiment	Pre-react	Labeling	Accuracy
HM207 5 U DNase	ddTTP = 1.8 mM dTTP = TdTase = 50 U Temp = room T Time = 1 hr	FITC-dUTP = 5 nmol dATP = 50 nmol TdTase = 50 U Temp = room T Time = 1 hr	At least one strand = 100.0% Both strands = 91.3% GeneSeq Composite = NA
HM217 5 U DNase	ddTTP = 1.0 mM dTTP = 3.0 mM TdTase = 12.5 U Temp = room T Time = overnight	FITC-dUTP = 0.5 nmol dATP = 5 nmol TdTase = 5 U Temp = room T Time = 15 min	At least one strand = 99.8% Both strands = 89.6% GeneSeq Composite = 99.2%
HM220 5 U DNase	ddTTP = 1.8 mM dTTP = 3.0 mM TdTase = 50 U Temp = room T Time = overnight	FITC-dUTP = 0.5 nmol dATP = 50 nmol TdTase = 50 U Temp = room T Time = 15 min	At least one strand = 100.0% Both strands = 99.1% GeneSeq Composite = 99.1%

These results show that base calling accuracy can be impacted by the length of the target fragments. Such results further demonstrate the utility of the methods disclosed herein.

Other experiments have shown that 1U of DNase is particularly useful in obtaining ideal fragment lengths.

Example 14

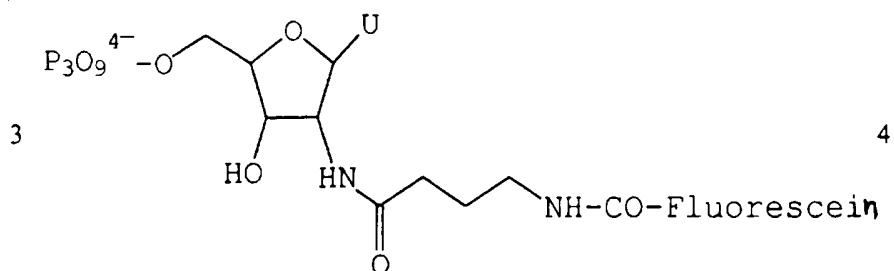
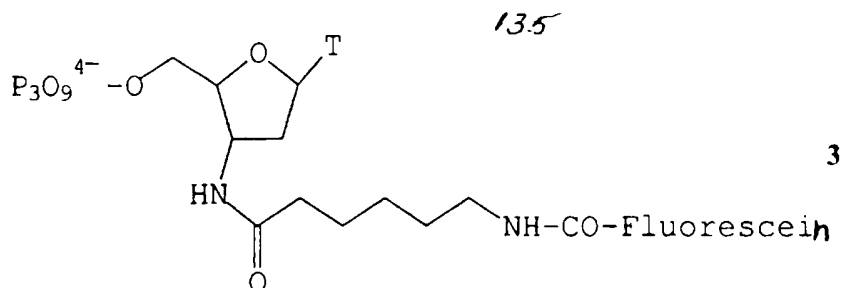
End-Labeling (Tailing) with Poly T

The nucleic acids tailed with poly-A or poly-A analogs (labeled or unlabeled) using methods similar to those set forth in Example 13 can be labeled using labeled poly-T, as shown in Figure 22.

Example 15.

Synthesis of Fluorescent Triphosphate Labels

To 0.5 μ moles (50 μ L of a 10 mM solution) of the amino-derivatized nucleotide triphosphate, 3'-amino-3'-deoxythymidinetriphosphate (1) or 2'-amino-2'-deoxyuridine triphosphate (2), in a 0.5 ml eppendorf tube was added 25 μ L of 1 M aqueous solution of sodium borate, pH 7, 87 μ L of methanol, and 88 μ L (10 μ mol, 20 wquiv) of a 100 mM solution of 5-carboxyfluorescein-X-NHS ester in methanol. The mixture was vortexed briefly and allowed to stand at room temperature in the dark for 15 hours. The sample was then purified by ion-exchange HPLC to afford the fluoresceinated derivatives Formula 3 or Formula 4, below, in about 78-84% yield.



Experiments suggest that these molecules are not substrates for terminal transferase (TdT). It is believed, however, that these molecules would be

5 substrates for a polymerase, such as klenow fragment.

Example 10

Synthesis of as-Triazine-3,5[2H,4H]-diones

The analogs as-triazine-3,5[2H,4H]-dione ("6-aza-pyrimidine")

10 nucleotides (see, Fig. 23a) are synthesized by methods similar to those used by Petric

et al. (1994). The nucleotides are synthesized including dUTP or ddUTP. See for example Lopez-Canovas, L. Et al., *Arch. Med. Res* **25**: 189-192 (1994); Li, X., et al., *Cytometry* **20**: 172-180 (1995); Boulwood, J. Et al., *J*

136

Pathol. **148**: 61 ff. (1986); Traincard, et al., *Ann. Immunol.* **1340**: 399-405 (1983); and Figures 23a, and 23b set forth herein.

Details of the synthesis of nucleoside analogs corresponding to all of the above structures (in particular those of Fig. 23b) have been described in the literature. Known procedures can be applied in order to attach a linker to the base. The linker modified nucleosides can then be converted to a triphosphate amine for final attachment of the dye or hapten which can be carried out using commercially available activated derivatives.

Other suitable labels include non-ribose or non-2'-deoxyribose-containing structures some of which are illustrated in Fig. 23c and sugar-modified nucleotide analogues such as are illustrated in Fig. 23d.

Using the guidance provided herein, the methods for the synthesis of reagents and methods (enzymatic or otherwise) of label incorporation useful in practicing the invention will be apparent to those skilled in the art. See, for example, *Chemistry of Nucleosides and Nucleotides 3*, Townsend, L.B. ed., Plenum Press, New York, at chpt. 4, Gordon, S. *The Synthesis and Chemistry of Imidazole and Benzamidazole Nucleosides and Nucleotides* (1994); Gen. Chem. Chemistry of Nucleosides and Nucleotides 3, Townsend, L.B. ed., Plenum Press, New York (1994); can be made by methods similar to those set forth in Chemistry of Nucleosides and Nucleotides 3, Townsend, L.B. ed., Plenum Press, New York, at chpt. 4, Gordon, S. "The Synthesis and Chemistry of Imidazole and Benzamidazole Nucleosides and Nucleotides" (1994); Lopez-Canovas, L. Et al., *Arch. Med. Res* **25**: 189-192 (1994); Li, X., et al., *Cytometry* **20**: 172-180 (1995); Boulwood, J. Et al., *J. Pathol.* **148**: 61 ff. (1986); Traincard, et al., *Ann. Immunol.* **1340**: 399-405 (1983).

Example 11

Direct, coordinative, non-covalent binding of Biotin-chem-link to N⁶ of adenosine and

guanosine involves heating 1 µg RNA or DNA + 1 µl BCL in 20 µl vol. 85°C for 30

minutes

137

RNA labeling experiment (4 sets of 4 pooled RNA transcripts)

Very poor labeling and/or hybridization (cant see 5 pM at all, 20 pM is very weak). Samples may have been lost after labeling when microcon-100s was used to remove unincorporated label. RNA was fragmented after labeling. It is believed that this should not be a problem (BM tech help).

BCL labeling of dsDNA

Low signal, background across the entire chip. No discrimination.

10 **Fast-Tag (Vector Labs) (RNA)**

Should get 1 biotin per 10-20 bases. Five reactions were run:

- a) RNA1+RNA2+RNA3 (5 pmoles each, total of 5.2 ug) + 25 ul Fast Tag reagent
 - b) RNA1+RNA2+RNA3 (9 pmoles each, total of 9.4 ug) + 25 ul Fast Tag reagent
 - c) RNA1+RNA2+RNA3 (18 pmoles each, total of 19 ug) + 40 ul Fast Tag reagent
 - 15 d) RNA4+RNA5+RNA6 (10 pmoles each, total of 8.7 ug) + 25 ul Fast Tag reagent
 - e) RNA7+RNA8+RNA9 (10 pmoles each, total of 11.4 ug) + 25 ul Fast Tag reagent
- The heat method was used to link S-S to RNA. The result: 20 x lower hybridization signal than same targets labeled by IVT method.

20

Example 12**RNA ligase/bio-a6 end labeling**

This experiment generally involved the following steps: a). RNA was fragmented; b) RNA fragments were 5' phosphorylated with polynucleotide kinase/ATP; and c) The 5' end of the RNA is ligated to the 3' end of BioA6 using RNA ligase. This is illustrated by the following formula:



Previously this technique was used to label target RNA for hybridization.

25 However, due to a number of factors, including a lack of mixing was a significant problem and resulted in low hybridization intensities. *In vitro* transcription (IVT) labeled RNA under these conditions gave 10 X higher signal than bio-A6/RNA Ligase labeled target

138

In other experiments, 3 different ratios of bio-A6:RNA were used:

- 1) 1x bioA6 = 0.5 nmoles biotin-A6 per 1 ug RNA);
- 2) 2x bioA6; and
- 3) 4xBio A6.

5 After labeling, the sample was spun through a microcon-EZ and microcon-3 to remove enzymes and dilute out buffer components.

Bio-A6 labeled target hybridized to chips (high density oligonucleotide arrays) gave approximately the same hyb. intensity as *in vitro* transcription (IVT) labeled target.

10 Staining was for 15 minutes with PE at normal conc. No significantly higher signal or background was seen with 4x as much bioA6 per ug RNA.

For these experiments, BioA6: (5' biotin-AAAAAA RNA) was ordered from Genset.

15 *Example 13*

Preparation of Gene-Specific Transcripts

Template DNA preparation

Linearization of vector:

If the gene is not already cloned in a vector with T3 and T7 RNA
20 polymerase promoter sites flanking the insert, see PCR amplification below.

The vector is linearized with an enzyme that cuts at the 3' end of the insert for sense transcripts, or at the 5' end for antisense transcripts. The insert sequence was checked to verify that the RE does not cut internally. In a preferred embodiment, a restriction enzyme was chosen that does not produce 3' protruding
25 ends.

Following linearization, an aliquot of the sample is run on a gel (next

30 sample) The sample treated with RNase H (100 U/ml) at 37°C for 20 min - 1 hour to remove enzyme or residual RNases (used in plasmid miniprep protocols).

139

The linearized DNA is purified DNA by phenol/chloroform extraction and ethanol precipitation or 3-4 rounds of microcon-100 concentration/redilution (see below).

5 **PCR amplification**

Amplification is only preferred if the desired region of the gene is not already in a cloning vector with RNA polymerase promoters.

Starting with genomic DNA (or cDNA), amplify the ORF of interest (or region of the gene represented on the chip) using PCR primers with 5' T3/T7 RNA polymerase promoter sequences and 3' gene-specific sequences.

The following 5' sequence has worked well (with 19-21 gene-specific bases added to the 3' end).

5'-GAATTGTAATACGACTCACTATAGGGAGG-[+19-21 gene-specific bases]-3'

The 5' end consists of:

- a) six 5' flanking bases of your choice - not part of the promoter sequence, but necessary for maximum IVT efficiency.
- b) 17 bases of the core T7 RNA polymerase promoter sequence
- c) 1st 6 bases transcribed (sequence of +1 to +6 can affect efficiency)

The other PCR primer would then contain the T3 RNA polymerase promoter sequence at the 5' end. The following sequence has worked well:

5'-AGATGCAATTAACCCTCACTAAAGGGAGA-(+19-21 gene-specific bases)-3'

The 5' end consists of:

- a) six 5' flanking bases of your choice - not part of the promoter sequence, but necessary for maximum IVT efficiency.
- b) 17 bases of core T3 RNA Polymerase promoter sequence
- c) +1 to +6 transcribed bases

140

Amplify the desired sequence using standard PCR conditions with 1st
5 cycles at the annealing temp. best suited for the gene specific part of the primers
alone (typically 55-58°C), followed by 25 cycles with annealing at 70°C. Check PCR
products on an agarose gel (3-5 ul of a 100 µl rxn). It is not necessary to quantify at
5 this stage.

Optional Proteinase K treatment:

Add 1 ul of Proteinase K (20 mg/ml) (Ambion) to the remainder of the
PCR reaction and incubate 20 min to 1 h at 50-60°C. This is usually not necessary,
10 but if the *in vitro* transcription (IVT) products appear degraded while the control IVT
product included in the kit (described later) is full length, then this step may be added
prior to the microcon-100 and IVT.

Microcon 50/100 purification

15 Other purification methods are being tested. Ethanol precipitation can
be substituted for microcon-50 purification. CAUTION: Microcons may leak. Save all
flow-through portions.

Add 380 µl RNase-free water to the PCR product and concentrate
using a microcon-100 or microcon-50 as suggested in instructions (Amicon). Repeat
20 the dilution and concentration 2-3 times. The final concentrated sample should be 5-
100 µl.

In vitro transcription labeling with biotin

For maximum yield use Ambion's T3 (#1338) or T7 (#1334)
25 Megascript system (their proprietary buffer allows higher nucleotide concentrations
without inhibiting the polymerase). (Read Ambion instructions and suggestions in kit

and UTP. Do not interchange T3 and T7 Tpx nucleotides that come with the
30 Megascript kits

For example, make a NTP mix for 4 IVT labeling reactions as follow

141

8 µl Ambion's T7 10x ATP [75 mM]

8 µl Ambion's T7 10x GTP [75 mM]

6 µl Ambion's T7 10x CTP [75 mM]

6 µl Ambion's T7 10x UTP [75 mM]

5 15 µl Bio-11-CTP [10 mM] (ENZO #42818)

15 µl Bio-16-UTP [10 mM] (ENZO #42814)

For each IVT-labeling reaction, add (at room temp. - not on ice):

14.5 ul NTP mix

2.0 ul 10x T7 transcription buffer (Ambion)

10 *1.5 ul purified PCR product (not more than 1 µg)

2.0 ul 10x T7 enzyme mix (Ambion)

*Do NOT add more than 1 ug of DNA to the IVT reaction. Higher concentrations of DNA actually inhibit the reaction and result in LOWER yields. Final rNTP composition:

15 7.5 mM ATP

7.5 mM GTP

5.625 mM cold UTP/1.875 mM bio-UTP

5.625 mM cold CTP/1.875 mM bio-CTP

Incubate 4-6 hours at 37°C. Shorter incubation times may be sufficient for some transcripts or when maximum yield is not important.

20

Optional: DNase I treatment

Add 1 µl RNase-free DNaseI (provided with Ambion kit) to each reaction and mix well. Incubate 15-20 min. at 37°C.

25

Optional - Proteinase K treatment

This step may help reduce background.

1. Add 1 µl of Ambion's 20 mg/ml proteinase K

2. Add RNase-free water to IVT reactions to a final volume of 99 µl

30 Add 1 ul of Ambion's 20 mg/ml proteinase K

Incubate at 50°C 20-30 min.

142

Microcon purification

Several other purification methods have been tested - many did not sufficiently remove rNTPs or had low yields. A protocol for Carboxy bead-based purification (Archana Nair) looks very promising and will soon be used in place of microcon purification.

Note: Set aside an aliquot of the IVT reaction before further purification. Setting aside 1% will enable trouble shooting of this step if necessary.

1. Add 400 μ l DEPC water to sample and concentrate sample with microcon 50 or 100 (as suggested by Amicon). SAVE ALL FLOW-THROUGH FRACTIONS..
2. Repeat dilution/concentration 3-4 times. Final volume can be 10-100 μ l.

See comments below.

Check IVT product(s) on a gel

Usually it is sufficient to check ~0.01-1% of the reaction on a nondenaturing agarose/TBE gel. Samples are heated to 65°C for 15 minutes prior to electrophoresis. A single band close to the expected size is usually observed.

If there is enough space on the gel, run 2 or 3 different dilutions of both the unpurified and purified IVT products on a gel (~0.01%, 0.1% and 1% of each). Gels can be stained with Sybr Green II (FMC) at a 1:10,000 dilution in 1x TBE buffer (more sensitive than ethidium bromide).

If precise determination of transcript size is desired, a denaturing gel can be run with biotinylated RNA standards (available from Ambion).

Quantify transcript yield by A

Quantitation of purified transcript: about 1% of the concentrated sample diluted with water (or TE) into a final volume of 60-70 μ l (for a microcuvette) should give absorbance readings within the accurate range (0.1-1 OD). For accurate pipetting

143

volumes ($> 1 \mu\text{l}$), it is usually necessary to make a serial dilution first (for example, make a 1/10 dilution of your RNA sample, then measure 10% of the dilution in 60-70 μl final vol.). Always be sure to take a blank reading in the same cuvette and using the same buffer/water that the RNA sample is diluted into.

5 Since accurate quantitation of pure transcript is essential for meaningful spiking experiments, extra care should be taken to verify that excess nucleotides from the IVT reaction have been sufficiently removed and are not contributing to the A_{260} .

10 The microcon flow through should be saved and checked for A_{260} . If significant absorbance is present in the last flow through, the RNA should be subjected to additional rounds of dilution and concentration until no significant absorbance is detected at 260 nm.

15 Since microcon filtration devices occasionally leak, it is advisable to save all flow-through fractions. If the transcript RNA concentration in the retained/collected sample is much lower than predicted, the flow-through fractions can be re-concentrated using a fresh cartridge (then diluted and re-concentrated at least 4 times).

Example 14

Labeling Total mRNA from Cells/Tissues

20 Starting material: Good quality poly A⁺ RNA from at least 5×10^5 - 1×10^6 cells \times (0.1 μg -5 μg poly A⁺). It is more economical to start with more poly A⁺ RNA (up to 5 μg), but if material is limited, as little as 0.1 μg of poly(A)⁺ can yield a sufficient quantity of labeled RNA target (10 μg after IVT labeling/amplification).

Double Stranded cDNA Synthesis:

25 This protocol is a supplement to instructions provided in Gibco BRL's Superscript Choice System. Refer to the instructions for the Superscript Choice System (see below) for priming the reverse transcription-first strand cDNA synthesis instead of the oligo(dT) or random primers provided with the kit.

30

144

T7-(T)₂₄ primer: 5'-GGCCAGTGAATTGTAATACGACTCACTATAGGGAG
GCCG-(T)₂₄-3'

First Strand Synthesis

- 5 Use 0.1 µg-5 µg Poly (A)⁺RNA and adjust amount of H₂O and enzyme
as indicated in the BRL instructions. For example:

3 µl DEPC-water
4.5 µl (1 µg/µl) mRNA
1 µl (100 pmol/ul) T7-(T)₂₄ primer

10

1. Mix/Spin/Incubate at 70°C for 10 minutes.
2. Chill on ice.
3. Add the following components (on ice) to the RNA/primer

mix:

15

4 µl of 5X 1st strand cDNA buffer
2 µl 0.1 M DTT
1 µl [10 mM] dNTP mix

4. Incubate at 37°C for 2 minutes.
5. Add 4.5 ul Superscript II reverse transcriptase/mix well. Use (1
20 ul SSII RT per ug RNA). For <1 ug RNA, use 1 ul RT.

6. Incubate for 1 hour at 37°C.

Final Reaction Composition (20 µl vol.):

50 mM Tris-HCl, pH 8.3

75 mM KCl

25

3 mM MgCl₂

10 mM DTT

500 uM each: dATP, dCTP, dGTP, dTTP

500 U RT (200 U per ug mRNA)

Second Strand Synthesis

145

1. Place first strand reactions on ice (quickly spin down).

2. Add:

95 μ l DEPC-H₂O

30 μ l 5x Second Strand Buffer

5 3 μ l [10 mM] dNTP mix

1 μ l [10 U/ μ l] E.coli DNA Ligase

4 μ l [10 U/ μ l] E. coli DNA Polymerase I

1 μ l [2 U/ μ l] RNaseH

Final Composition (150 μ l):

10 25 mM Tris-HCl, pH 7.5

100 mM KCl

5 mM MgCl₂

10 mM (NH₄)₂SO₄

0.15 mM b-NAD⁺

15 250 μ M each: dATP, dCTP, dGTP, dTTP

1.2 mM DTT

65 U/ml DNA ligase

250 U/ml DNA Polymerase I

13 U/ml RNase H

20 3. Mix/spin down/ incubate at 16°C for 2 hours.

4. Add 2 μ l [10 U] T4 DNA Polymerase.

5. Incubate 5 min. at 16°C.

6. Add 10 μ l 0.5 M EDTA/store at -20°C.

25 CLEAN UP

Phenol/chloroform extraction

Optional: To reduce sample loss during extraction, see the PI G

Phenol:chloroform:isoamyl alcohol (saturated with 10 mM

Tris-HCl pH 8.0/1mM EDTA - Sigma).

146

2. Vortex/spin 5 minutes @ 14000 x g. Transfer aqueous phase to a fresh 1.5 ml tube.

PLG-Phenol/Chloroform Extraction

5 Phase Lock Gels (PLG)* form an inert sealed barrier between the aqueous and organic phases of phenol-chloroform extractions. The solid barrier allows more complete recovery of the sample (aqueous phase) and minimizes interface contamination of the sample. PLG's are sold as premeasured aliquots in 1.5 ml tubes, to which the user directly adds sample and phenol-chloroform.

- 10 1. Pellet the Phase Lock Gel (1.5 ml tube with PLG I -light.) in a microcentrifuge for 20-30 seconds [PLG I-heavy should also work, but we haven't specifically tested it for this application].
2. Transfer the entire (162 µl) cDNA sample to the PLG tube.
3. Add an equal volume (162 µl) of (25:24:1) Phenol:
15 chlofroform: isoamyl alchohol (saturated with 10mM Tris-HCL
ph 8.0/1mMEDTA-Sigma).
4. Mix by inverting (DO NOT VORTEX). PLG will not become part of the suspension. Microcentrifuge at full speed (12,000 xg or greater) for 2 min.
- 20 5. Transfer the aqueous upper phase to a fresh 1.5 ml tube.

PLG I IS available from 5 Prime-3 Prime, Inc., cat. #pl-175850 for 50 or #pl-188233 for 200

Microcon-50 Purification

25 Other purification methods are being tested. Ethanol precipitation can be substituted for micron-50 purification. CAUTION: Microcons may leak. Save all flow-through portions

30 concentrate by spinning through a Microcon-50 column (Microcon-50 columns, Amicon part #42416) following directions supplied by Amicon.

- 147
3. Repeat dilution/concentration 3-4 times, collect and set aside flow through in case of column failure.

Concentrate to a final volume of 5-10 ul if possible, taking care not to allow the cartridge to spin to dryness. Collect upper volume.

5

In Vitro Transcription Labeling with Biotin

For maximum yield use Ambion's T3 (#1338) or T7 (#1334) Megascript System (their proprietary buffer allows higher nucleotide concentrations without inhibiting the polymerase).

10

Perform IVT as suggested, but with (1:3) biotinylated:unlabeled CTP and UTP. Do not interchange T3 and T7 10X nucleotides that come with the Megascript System. Read the Ambion detailed instructions and suggestions before proceeding.

15

NTP Labeling Mix

To make NTP labeling mix for 4 IVT-labeling reactions combine:

- 8 µl Ambion's T7 10x ATP [75 mM]
8 µl Ambion's T7 10x GTP [75 mM]
6 µl Ambion's T7 10x CTP [75 mM]
6 µl Ambion's T7 10x UTP [75 mM]
15 µl Bio-11-CTP [10 mM] (ENZO #42818)
15 µl Bio-16-UTP [10 mM] (ENZO #42814)

20

IVT Reaction

25

1. For each reaction, combine the following at room temperature, not on ice

14.5 µl NTP labeling mix

1.0 µl 10x T7 enzyme mix (Ambion) is optimal. See note below

2.0 µl 10x T7 enzyme mix (Ambion)

148

*Do NOT add more than 1 µg of ds cDNA to the IVT reaction. Higher concentrations of DNA actually inhibit the reaction and result in LOWER yields.

Final rNTP Composition:

- 5 7.5 mM ATP
- 7.5 mM GTP
- 5.625 mM cold UTP/1.875 mM bio-UTP
- 5.625 mM cold CTP/1.875 mM bio-CTP
- 2. Incubate 4-6 hours at 37°C. (Shorter incubation times may be
- 10 sufficient for some transcripts or when maximum yield is not
- important).
- 3. Store unused NTP labeling mix at -20°C.

CLEAN UP

Optional DNase I Treatment

- 15 1. Add 1 ul RNase-free DNaseI (provided with Ambion kit) to
- each reaction and mix well.
- 2. Incubate 15-20 min. at 37°C.

Optional Proteinase K Treatment

- 20 This treatment may help reduce background caused by nonspecific
- protein binding to chip and to Streptavidin-phycoerythrin.
- 1. Add RNase-free water to IVT reactions to a final volume of 99
- µl.
- 2. Add 1 µl of Ambion's 20 mg/ml Proteinase K.
- 25 3. Incubate at 50°C 20-30 minutes.

Microcon Purification

- 30 If you have had problems with the microcon purification (e.g., you have
- inefficiently remove rNTPs or had low yields) a protocol for carboxy bead-based
- purification (Archana Nair) looks very promising and will soon be used in place of
- microcon purification. Set aside an aliquot of the IVT reaction before further
- purification. Setting aside 1 µl will enable trouble shooting of this step if necessary.

149

1. Add 400 ul DEPC water to sample and concentrate sample with microcon 50 or 100 (as suggested by Amicon). SAVE ALL FLOW-THROUGH FRACTIONS..
2. Repeat dilution/concentration 3-4 times. Final volume can be 10-100 ul.
3. Since microcon filtration devices occasionally leak, it is advisable to save all flow-through fractions. If transcript RNA concentration in the retained/collected sample is much lower than predicted, the flow-through fractions can be re-concentrated using a fresh column then diluted and reconcentrated at least 4 times.

Notes on Yield

1. Starting with 4-5 ug poly (A)⁺ for the ds cDNA synthesis and using 20% of the purified ds cDNA sample for the IVT, expect ~75 - 125 ug labeled RNA per IVT reaction.
2. Reading ~ 1% of the concentrated sample diluted with water (or TE) into a final volume of 60-70 ul (for a microcuvette) should give absorbance data within the accurate range (0.1-1 OD). For accurate pipetting volumes (> 1 ul), it is usually necessary to make a serial dilution first. For example, make a 1/10 dilution of your RNA sample, then measure 10% of the dilution in 60-70 ul final volume. Be sure to take blank readings in the same cuvette and use the same buffer/water that was used for diluting the RNA sample.
3. For accurate quantitation of labeled RNA, extra care should be taken to verify that excess nucleotides from the IVT reaction have been sufficiently removed and are not contributing

to the absorbance. If significant absorbance is present in the last flow through, the RNA should be subjected to

15⁰
additional rounds of dilution and concentration until no significant absorbance is detected at 260 nm.

Check unfragmented samples on gel.

5 Electrophorese the labeled RNA before fragmentation to observe the size distribution of labeled transcripts. Samples can be heated to 65°C for 15 minutes and electrophoresed on agarose/TBE gels to get an approximate idea of the transcript size range. If there is enough space on the gel, run 2 or 3 different dilutions of both the unpurified and purified IVT products on a gel (~0.01%, 0.1% and 1% of each). Gels
10 can be stained with Sybr Green II (FMC) at a 1:10,000 dilution in 1x TBE buffer (more sensitive than ethidium bromide).

Alternatively, for more accurate estimations of the size distribution of the RNA population pre and post fragmentation, electrophorese samples through a denaturing gel using biotinylated RNA molecular weight markers (Ambion).

15

Example 15

Direct labeling of DNA with Psoralen-Biotin

The psoralen-biotin reagent comes lyophilized and can be bought separately or as part of "Rad-Free Universal Oligo Labeling and Hybridization Kit" (Schleicher & Schuell). It is actually cheaper (per nmole) when bought with the kit so
20 you might as well get the extra kit components and save money. The Rad-Free Universal Oligo Labeling and Hybridization kit: catalog # 483122 (contains 20 nmoles of Psoralen-biotin). The same kit with UV Long wave 365 nm lamp: #483124.

25 1. Spin down then resuspend the lyophilized psoralen-biotin reagent in either:

30 be more concentrated) OR

b) 56 ul of DMF if you will definitely be labeling before fragmentation.

1.5/

Labeling has been performed both before and after fragmenting with similar results, but it is easier to do before fragmentation because it can't be labeled in high salt (>20 mM).

5

2. Adjust the RNA/DNA concentration to 0.5 ug/10 ul (200 ul for 10 ug of DNA), less than 20 mM salt. pH does not matter (pH 2.5-10) so you can just use sterile or DEPCed water to resuspend or dilute the RNA/DNA into. Plasmid DNA needs to be linearized.

10

If RNA/DNA is in high salt, it can be diluted and concentrated using the appropriate size of microcon (even microcon 3 works for fragmented material but takes ~70 min per cycle).

3. Boil sample 10 min./quick chill on ice (store on ice 5 min-3hrs) [important - ds DNA will become cross-linked by reagent if strands are not separated before labeling]

15

4. In dim light add 1 ul of psoralen-biotin reagent per 20 ul of DNA/RNA solution (1ul psoralen-biotin that was resuspended in 56 ul DMF per ug DNA/RNA). *if Psoralen-biotin was resuspended in 14 ul, dilute the amount you will need for labeling 1:3 in DMF (1 ul conc. psoralen-biotin + 3 ul DMF)

20

5. Transfer solution to into a well of a 96-microwell plate on ice (up to 150 ul/well).
6. Place 365 nm UV lamp directly on top of plate so that light source is about 2 cm from the sample. Irradiate samples for one hour.

25

7. Transfer samples to microcentrifuge tubes and add 2 volumes of H₂O-saturated n-butanol to extract unincorporated psoralen biotin. vortex/centrifuge 1 min

30

fragment as you would normally. Denature as normal before hybridization (10 min 99-100°C).

* longer UV irradiation does not improve results.

*adding more psoralen-biotin per ug DNA/RNA does not seem to improve results.^{1.52}

Example 16

Psoralen-Biotin Labeling Experiments

5 Labeling RNA by standard protocol

Pool of 4 diff. fragmented RNA transcripts labeled with psoralen-biotin

Results of hybridization to chip (5 pM each). PB labeled targets showed approximately ~5x lower intensities than IVT(bio-U+C) labeled targets

10

Labeling before vs. after fragmentation:

No significant difference in hybridization intensities

Ratio of psoralen-biotin to RNA

15

Labeling with a 4x higher ratio of PB : RNA does not significantly affect hybridization intensities on chips.

Time of labeling reaction/uv lamp intensity

20

No significant difference between 1 vs. 3 hr. labeling or 15-20 mW/cm² (Affy lamp) vs. 5-7 mW/cm² (S&S lamp) intensity at 365 nm.

Psoralen-biotin

25

Psoralens: planar, tricyclic compounds

Psoralen-biotin: psoralen conjugated to biotin via 14-atom linker arm.

High affinity for nucleic acids

Intercalates into DNA/RNA

Becomes covalently attached when irradiated with long wave

30

Example 17

Terminal Transferase End-Labeling Protocol

This protocol is tested and optimized through the use of the PB 144 chips

chips.

DNase fragmentation

1.53

This will have enough for 4 labeling reactions:

	4 pmol of HIV PCR target (3.17ug of 1.2 kb insert)	Xul
	DNase (BRL)	Xul (1U/ug)
5	Calf Alkaline Phosphatase, 1U/ul (BRL)	2.5ul (2.5U/rx)
	Dilution CAP Buffer (BRL)	2.5ul
	MgCl ₂	Xul (1.25mM)
	Bring up with H ₂ O to 100ul	
	37°C for 15min.	
10	95°C for 10min.	
	4°C on hold.	

TdT Labeling

15 F-N6-ddATP, F-ddATP, F-ddCTP, and F-ddUTP are comparable labeled in the reaction. We decided to use F-N6-ddATP.

	Fragment DNA sample	25ul	(1pmol)
	5X TdT Buffer (Boehringer)	20ul	(1X)
	25mM CoCl ₂ (Boehringer)	10ul	(2.5mM)
	F-N6-ddATP (1mM)	1ul	(10uM)
20	TdT (25U/ul) (Boehringer)	1ul	(25U/rx)
	H ₂ O	43ul	

37°C for 30min.

95°C for 5min.

4°C on hold.

25

PRT 440S Hybridization (Rela Station)

Labeled sample	100ul
10X SSPE; 0.1% Triton X-100	300ul

9250

45°C Hyb for 30min.

20°C Wash with 6X SSPE, 0.005% Triton X-100; 4 cycles / 10 drain-fill

Scan chip at 530nm, 11.25um pixel size

¹⁵⁴
Example 18

Alternate Labeling Procedures

Ligation assay

RNA can be directly labeled by ligating an A6 RNA oligonucleotide with biotin at the 5' end with RNA ligase. Cre, a bacterial gene, was transcribed with T7 RNA polymerase to generate an antisense RNA. The RNA was fragmented and kinased with polynucleotide kinase to generate 5' phosphorylated ends. The Biotin A6 RNA was then ligated using T4 RNA ligase. 5pm of ligated RNA was tested on gene expression chips along with the labeled Cre.

Direct labeling of 3' RNA using Poly A polymerase

Poly A polymerase has been used to catalyze poly A tail on to the free 3' hydroxyl terminus of RNA utilizing ATP as a precursor. Recently, it was reported by Joomyeong Kim *et al.* (1995) *Nucl. Acids Res.*, 23(12): 2245-2251, that they successfully used poly A polymerase to tail 3' RNA with CTP. This method can be used to label fragmented RNA with biotin CTP to generate labeled target.

The advantage of this method is that sense RNA (mRNA) can be directly labeled by biotin CTP. Antisense RNA can also be labeled after fragmentation. The consumption of CTP can be cut down by 1/5th compared to an IVT reaction.

Example 19

Direct Labeling Protocol

Reagents for direct labeling mRNA

- 1) 100 μ M rATP 200 μ l
- 198 μ L DEPC H₂O
- 2 μ L (10 mM) rATP

CTP (excised) 158.5

- 3) 30 mM DTT
- 4) 10 U/ μ L polynucleotide kinase

Boehringer Mannheim, GmbH, phosphate-free cat. # 882.0

5) 1 nmole/ μ L BioA6 1.55

Genetics Institute

6) 5U/ μ L T4 RNA Ligase + 10 X T4 RNA Ligase Buffer

Epicentre Technologies, catalogue # LR5025

5 7) 5 X RNA Fragmentation Buffer

200 mM Tris-Acetate, pH 8.1

500 mM KOAc

150 mM MgOAc

Direct Labeling Protocol

10 ***Fragmentation***

Add to a 1.5 ml sterile tube

8 μ L poly (A)⁺ RNA in DEPC-H₂O (1 μ g)

2 μ L 5 X RNA Fragmentation Buffer

Heat to 94°C for 35 minutes.

15 ***Kinase Reaction***

Add to the 10 μ L fragmented RNA:

2.4 μ L rATP (100 μ M)

2 μ L BSA (100 μ g/ml)

2 μ L DTT (30 mM)

20 1.6 μ L DEPC-H₂O

2 μ L polynucleotide kinase (10 U/ μ L)

Incubate at 37 °C for 2.5 hours. Heat to 94°C for 2 minutes (heat kill enzyme).

T4 RNA Ligase Reaction

25 Add to the 20 μ L kinased RNA:

0.5 μ L BioA6 (1 nmole/ μ L in DEPC-H₂O)

3 μ L rATP (19 mM)

3 μ L 10 x T4 RNA Ligase buffer

Example 20

Computer Algorithms to Perform Basecalling on a Target DNA

Sample Hybridized or Ligated to Generic DNA Arrays.

1.5b
Resequencing a DNA target by generating a set of n electronic tiling arrays on an n-mer generic DNA array.

This method of resequencing the target is similar to the method used with customized resequencing GeneChips except that unlike the custom GeneChips which physically place a single series of tiling probes on the chip, with a generic GeneChip a computer electronically reconstructs a set of n tiling arrays by fetching the appropriate probe information from the generic array (a generic array contains a possible n-mer sequences). In general, to resequence a target DNA, the target is decomposed into an n-mer complement word spectrum of tiling probes. For each tiling probe, there exists a set of "first order nearest-neighbor" tiling probes (probes containing a single base substitution) on the generic chip (generic chips also contain higher order nearest neighbors). This process is termed tiling through the target sequence with n-mer words (Fig. 24). To make a basecall at a given position within the target, the intensity of the tiling probe at that position is compared to the intensities of its "nearest-neighbors" at that position. There are n sets of such "nearest-neighbors" because the single base substitution can occur at n different positions within the probe. The base substitution at a particular position within the probe that yields the highest intensity is the base called for that position within the probe (Fig. 25). The advantage of using a generic DNA array vs. the standard custom GeneChips is the high degree of redundancy achieved for each basecall of the target. An n-mer generic arrays makes n base calls for each base within the target whereas the custom resequencing GeneChips make only a single base call.

The final basecall of a target base is decided upon by an electronic vote of the base calls from the n different electronic tilings at each target position (Fig. 26).

Emperically using the accuracy of the basecalls derived from the n electronic tiling arrays to filter out inaccurate electronic tilings

For a given target, a set of n electronic tilings are generated and the corresponding basecalls made. A correctness score table is constructed by giving a score of 1 if a given tiling substitution series makes a correct basecall or a score of 0 if the basecall is incorrect (Fig. 27). A confidence level for a given basecall can also be attached to each scoring

according to the ratio of the intensities of the base¹⁵⁷ substitutions for any given basecall.

A variant DNA sample is then hybridized/ligated to a second generic DNA array. Again a set of n electronic tilings are generated, except this time all tilings are
5 discarded which have a 0 correctness score, and only those tilings which have a correctness score of 1 are included in the overall base voting procedure (Fig 28). The result is to dramatically improve the overall percentage of correct basecalls.

*Comparing "locally" normalized tiling probe intensities between a reference sample
10 and a variant is a sensitive method of detecting a mutation.*

For a given n-mer generic array, the ability to correctly resequence a target decreases as the complexity of the target increases. As the target complexity increases, the number of n-mer tiling probes which repeat themselves within the target increases, the cross-talk between nearest neighbors at different positions increases,
15 and the overall cross hybridization increases. All these factors contribute to miscalls of the bases within the target. The comparison of a sample target against a reference target provides a powerful way to "filter out" all the non-specific noise via difference detection.

One method of comparison between the reference and sample is to
20 compare the intensities of the tiling probes themselves. However, before a direct comparison can be made, the intensities have to be normalized in some matter to account for both chip to chip and sample to sample variation. I employed a "local" normalization process to normalize the signals. By "local" normalization, I simply divide the intensity of the tiling probe by the sum of the intensities of its nearest
25 neighbors (Fig. 29).

This method of normalization creates good signal tracking between samples and is quite sensitive to the presence of a mutation indicated by the formation of a "bubble" (Fig. 30). This "local" normalization tiling probe comparison method

can be easily visualized by comparing the normalized intensities of the tiling probes between a reference sample and a variant sample.

Induced Difference method for detecting mutations.

Another method for using comparisons between a reference and a sample to detect mutations is via mutational "induced differences" between tilings

probes and their nearest neighbors. Application of this method to a first order nearest neighbor tiling analysis involves comparing "locally normalized" probes in the reference target to the corresponding probe in the sample target. Tilings that were uninformative in part II, because they miscalled the base, may now be informative because certain probe members within that tiling can be induced (caused to increase or decrease in intensity) between the reference and the sample indicating the presence of a mutation (Fig 31.) These inductions are summed over all the tilings on both the forward and reverse strand for a given target position, and the resultant number is a measure of whether a mutation is present or not (Fig. 32, Fig. 33).

Example 21

Use of Inosine on the 5' ends of the MenPoc synthesized probes to increase duplex stability and increase the resultant ligation signal on Generic Ligation GeneChips.

We investigated the use of adding degenerate bases, such as inosine (pairs with all other bases), to the end of the MenPoc synthesized probes to increase duplex stability. We found that indeed, the addition of 1-6 inosines onto the end of the probes did in fact increase the signal intensity in both hybridization and ligation reactions on a Generic Ligation GeneChip and allowed us to ligate at higher temperatures.

Inosines (0 -6) are placed at the 5' end of the probe during manufacturing, and the effects of these terminal inosines are assayed by ligating a DNAaseI digested, TdT labeled 788 bp DNA fragment to the chips. The increased brightness with 2 -6 inosines indicated an enhancement of duplex stability. With 6 inosines there is a slight decrease in intensity compared to 2-4 inosines because the terminal inosines are probably starting to form quartet-like secondary structures.

Example 22

Comparison between the specificity of T4 ligase and Taq ligase when used on a Generic Ligation GeneChip.

We investigated whether T4 ligase or Taq ligase was more specific in ligating target to the Generic Ligation GeneChip. In order use Taq ligase, we need to perform the ligation reaction at 40 degrees C or higher. Consequently, we used an 8-

mer chip with 6 Inosines at the end of the MenPoc¹⁵⁹ probes to increase the thermal stability of the duplexes. This allowed us to perform the Taq ligase reaction at 44 degrees C and compare this to a T4 ligation reaction at 37 degrees C. Our results indicated that Taq is much more specific than T4 ligase, and ligates a set of target
5 ends that T4 ligase is unable to ligate.

Taq lights up fewer features but with a brighter intensity than T4 does indicating the specificity of Taq versus T4.

Intensity profiles of the tiling probes and nearest neighbor substitutions at given probe positions within the target illustrate that Taq is more specific than T4
10 and that Taq detects signal intensity at probes that T4 fails to detect signal.

It is understood that the examples and embodiments described herein are for illustrative purposes only and that various modifications or changes in light thereof will be suggested to persons skilled in the art and are to be included within the spirit and purview of this application and scope of the appended claims. All publications,
15 patents, and patent applications cited herein are hereby incorporated by reference for all purposes.

WHAT IS CLAIMED IS:

160

1. A method of identifying differences in nucleic acid levels between two or more nucleic acid samples, said method comprising the steps of:

- 5 (a) providing one or more oligonucleotide arrays said arrays comprising probe oligonucleotides attached to a surface;
- (b) hybridizing said nucleic acid samples to said one or more arrays to form hybrid duplexes between nucleic acids in said nucleic acid samples and probe oligonucleotides in said one or more arrays that are complementary to said nucleic acids or subsequences thereof;
- 10 (c) contacting said one or more arrays with a nucleic acid ligase; and
- (d) determining differences in hybridization between said nucleic acid samples wherein said differences in hybridization indicate differences in said nucleic acid levels.

15

2. The method of claim 1, further comprising contacting said oligonucleotide arrays with one or more ligatable oligonucleotides.

3. The method of claim 2, wherein said ligatable oligonucleotides are a pool of all possible oligonucleotides of a preselected length.

20

4. The method of claim 2, wherein said determining comprises detecting one or more of said ligatable oligonucleotides attached to said array.

25

5. The method of claim 1, wherein said one or more arrays is at least two arrays and said arrays are essentially the same in probe oligonucleotide composition.

wherein said nucleotides are essentially the same in said array

7. The method of claim 1, wherein each of said nucleic acid samples is hybridized to a different array, the different arrays having substantially the same probe oligonucleotide composition.

35

8. The method of claim 1, wherein two or more of said nucleic acid
samples are hybridized to a single oligonucleotide array.

9. The method of claim 8, wherein said nucleic acid samples are
simultaneously hybridized to a single oligonucleotide array.

10. The method of claim 1, wherein said probe oligonucleotides are
pairs of probe oligonucleotides that differ from each other in preselected nucleotides.

11. The method of claim 10, wherein said pairs of probe
oligonucleotides differ from each other in a single nucleotide.

12. The method of claim 10, wherein said determining comprises
determining the difference in sample nucleic acid hybridization intensity between the
members of said pairs of probe oligonucleotides.

13. A method of identifying differences in nucleic acid levels between
two or more nucleic acid samples, said method comprising the steps of:

(a) providing one or more oligonucleotide arrays comprising
probe oligonucleotides wherein said probe oligonucleotides comprise a constant
region and a variable region;

(b) hybridizing said nucleic acid samples to said one or more
arrays to form hybrid duplexes between nucleic acids in said nucleic acid samples and
said variable regions that are complementary to said nucleic acids or subsequences
thereof; and

(c) determining differences in hybridization between said
nucleic acid samples wherein said differences in hybridization indicate differences in
said nucleic acid levels.

length from about 5 nucleotides to about 50 oligonucleotides.

15. The method of claim 13, wherein the variable regions of said
probe oligonucleotides comprise any number of oligonucleotides of a preselected length.

16. The method of claim 15, wherein said variable regions are at least ¹⁶² 5 nucleotides in length.

5 17. The method of claim 13, wherein said constant region ranges in length from 3 nucleotides to about 25 nucleotides.

18. The method of claim 13, wherein said constant regions comprise a nucleotide sequence complementary to a sense or antisense sequence of the recognition site of a restriction endonuclease.

10

19. The method of claim 13, further comprising contacting said oligonucleotide arrays with a constant oligonucleotide complementary to said constant region or a subsequence thereof.

15

20. The method of claim 19, comprising contacting said array with a ligase.

21. The method of claim 19, wherein said determining comprises detecting a nucleic acid of said nucleic acid samples attached to said constant oligonucleotide.

20

22. The method of claim 13, wherein said probe oligonucleotides are pairs of probe oligonucleotides that differ from each other in preselected nucleotides.

25

23. The method of claim 22, wherein said determining comprises determining the difference in sample nucleic acid hybridization intensity between the members of said pairs of probe oligonucleotides.

24. The method of claim 23, wherein said method comprising the steps of:

(a) providing one or more arrays of oligonucleotides each array comprising pairs of probe oligonucleotides where the members of each pair of probe oligonucleotides differ from each other in preselected nucleotides

(b) hybridizing said nucleic acid samples to said one or more arrays to form hybrid duplexes between nucleic acids in said nucleic acid samples and

35

probe oligonucleotides in said one or more ^{16.3} arrays that are complementary to said nucleic acids or subsequences thereof;

(c) determining the differences in hybridization between said nucleic acid samples wherein said differences in hybridization indicate differences in
5 said nucleic acid levels.

25. The method of claim 24, wherein said members of each pair of probe oligonucleotides differ from each other in a centrally located nucleotide.

10 26. A method of identifying differences in nucleic acid levels between two or more nucleic acid samples, said method comprising the steps of:

(a) providing one or more arrays of oligonucleotide arrays each array comprising more than 100 different probe oligonucleotides wherein:

15 each different probe oligonucleotide is localized in a predetermined region of the array;

each different probe oligonucleotide is attached to a surface through a terminal covalent bond;

the density of said probe different oligonucleotides is greater than about 60 different oligonucleotides per 1 cm²;

20 (b) hybridizing said nucleic acid samples to said one or more arrays to form hybrid duplexes between nucleic acids in said nucleic acid samples and probe oligonucleotides in said one or more arrays that are complementary to said nucleic acids or subsequences thereof;

(c) determining the differences in hybridization between said
25 nucleic acid samples wherein said differences in hybridization indicate differences in said nucleic acid levels.

27. The method of claim 26, further comprising contacting said one or

28. A method of identifying differences in nucleic acid levels between two or more nucleic acid samples, said method comprising the steps of:

(a) providing one or more oligonucleotide arrays each comprising probe oligonucleotides wherein said probe oligonucleotides are not chosen
35 to hybridize to nucleic acids derived from particular preselected genes or mRNAs.

(b) hybridizing said nucleic acid samples to said one or more arrays to form hybrid duplexes between nucleic acids in said nucleic acid samples and probe oligonucleotides in said one or more arrays that are complementary to said nucleic acids or subsequences thereof; and

5 (d) determining differences in hybridization between said nucleic acid samples wherein said differences in hybridization indicate differences in said nucleic acid levels.

29. The method of claim 28, wherein said probe oligonucleotides are
10 pairs of probe oligonucleotides that differ from each other in preselected nucleotides.

30. The method of claim 29, wherein said determining comprises determining the difference in sample nucleic acid hybridization intensity between the members of said pairs of probe oligonucleotides.

15 31. A method of identifying differences in nucleic acid levels between two or more nucleic acid samples, said method comprising the steps of:

(a) providing one or more oligonucleotide arrays each comprising probe oligonucleotides wherein said probe oligonucleotides comprise a
20 nucleotide sequence or subsequences selected according to a process selected from the group consisting of a random selection, a haphazard selection, a nucleotide composition biased selection, and all possible oligonucleotides of a preselected length;

(b) hybridizing said nucleic acid samples to said one or more
25 arrays to form hybrid duplexes between nucleic acids in said nucleic acid samples and probe oligonucleotides in said one or more arrays that are complementary to said nucleic acids or subsequences thereof; and

(c) determining differences in hybridization between said
and nucleic acid levels

32. The method of claim 31, wherein said nucleotide sequence or nucleotide subsequences are all possible oligonucleotides of a preselected length selected from the group consisting of: all possible 6 mers, all possible 7 mers, all

possible 8 mers, all possible 9 mers, all possible ¹⁶⁵10 mers, all possible 11 mers, and all possible 12 mers.

- 5 33. A method of simultaneously monitoring the expression of a multiplicity of genes, said method comprising:
- (a) providing a pool of target nucleic acids comprising RNA transcripts of one or more of said genes, or nucleic acids derived from said RNA transcripts;
 - (b) hybridizing said pool of nucleic acids to an oligonucleotide array comprising probe oligonucleotides immobilized on a surface;
 - 10 (c) contacting said oligonucleotide array with a ligase; and
 - (d) quantifying the hybridization of said nucleic acids to said array wherein said quantifying provides a measure of the levels of transcription of said genes.

- 15 34. The method of claim 33, wherein said probe oligonucleotides comprise nucleotide sequences or nucleotide subsequences complementary to preselected RNA transcripts of one or more of said genes, or nucleic acids derived from said RNA transcripts.

- 20 35. A method of simultaneously monitoring the expression of a multiplicity of genes, said method comprising:
- (a) providing one or more oligonucleotide arrays comprising probe oligonucleotides wherein said probe oligonucleotides comprise a constant region and a variable region;
 - 25 (b) providing a pool of target nucleic acids comprising RNA transcripts of one or more of said genes, or nucleic acids derived from said RNA transcripts;
 - (c) hybridizing said pool of nucleic acids to said array of
- array wherein said quantifying provides a measure of the levels of transcription of said genes.

- 35 36. The method of claim 35 wherein said probe oligonucleotides comprise nucleotide sequences or nucleotide subsequences complementary to

preselected RNA transcripts of one or more of ¹⁶⁶said genes, or nucleic acids derived from said RNA transcripts.

37. A method of making a nucleic acid array for identifying
5 differences in nucleic acid levels between two or more nucleic acid samples, said method comprising the steps of:

- (a) providing an oligonucleotide array comprising probe oligonucleotides wherein said probe oligonucleotides comprise a constant region and a variable region;
- 10 (b) hybridizing one or more of said nucleic acid samples to said arrays to form hybrid duplexes of said variable region and nucleic acids in said nucleic acid samples comprising subsequences complementary to said variable region;
- (c) attaching the sample nucleic acids comprising said hybrid duplexes to said array of probe oligonucleotides; and
- 15 (d) removing unattached nucleic acids to provide a high density oligonucleotide array bearing sample nucleic acids attached to said array.

38. A method of making a nucleic acid array for identifying
differences in nucleic acid levels between two or more nucleic acid samples, said
20 method comprising the steps of:

- (a) providing an array comprising more than 100 different probe oligonucleotides wherein:
 - each different probe oligonucleotide is localized in a predetermined region of the array;
 - 25 each different probe oligonucleotide is attached to a surface through a terminal covalent bond;
 - the density of said probe different oligonucleotides is greater than about 60 different oligonucleotides per 1 cm²;

acid samples form hybrid duplexes with probe oligonucleotides in said arrays:

- (c) attaching the sample nucleic acids comprising said hybrid duplexes to said array of probe oligonucleotides; and
 - (d) removing unattached nucleic acids to provide a high density oligonucleotide array bearing sample nucleic acids attached to said array.
- 35

39. A kit for identifying differences in nucleic acid levels between two or more nucleic acid samples, said kit comprising:

a container containing one or more oligonucleotide arrays said arrays comprising probe oligonucleotides attached to a surface; and

5 a container containing a ligase.

40. A kit for identifying differences in nucleic acid levels between two or more nucleic acid samples, said kit comprising:

10 a container containing one or more oligonucleotide arrays said arrays comprising probe oligonucleotides wherein said probe oligonucleotides comprise a constant region and a variable region/

41. The kit of claim 40, further comprising a constant oligonucleotide complementary to said constant region or a subsequence thereof.

15

42. A method of labeling a nucleic acid, said method comprising the steps of:

20 (a) providing a nucleic acid;
(b) amplifying said nucleic acid to form amplicons;
(c) fragmenting said amplicons to form fragments of said amplicons; and (d) coupling a labeled moiety to at least one of said fragments.

43. A method of labeling a nucleic acid, said method comprising the steps of:

25 (a) providing a nucleic acid;
(b) transcribing said nucleic acid to form a transcribed nucleic acid;

(c) coupling a labeled moiety to at least one of said fragments.

44. A method of labeling a nucleic acid comprising the steps of:

30 (a) providing at least one nucleic acid coupled to a support,

- (b) providing a labeled moiety¹⁶⁸ capable of being coupled with a terminal transferase to said nucleic acid;
- (c) providing said terminal transferase; and
- (d) coupling said labeled moiety to said nucleic acid using said terminal transferase.

44. A method of labeling a nucleic acid comprising the steps of:
- (a) providing at least two nucleic acids coupled to a support;
- (b) increasing the number of monomer units of said nucleic acids to form a common nucleic acid tail on said at least two nucleic acids;
- (c) providing a labeled moiety capable of recognizing said common nucleic acid tails; and
- (d) contacting said common nucleic acid tails and said labeled moiety.

15

45. A method of labeling a nucleic acid comprising the steps of:
- (a) providing at least one nucleic acid coupled to a support;
- (b) providing a labeled moiety capable of being coupled with a ligase to said nucleic acid;
- (c) providing said ligase; and
- (d) coupling said labeled moiety to said nucleic acid using said ligase.

20

46. A compound having the formula:



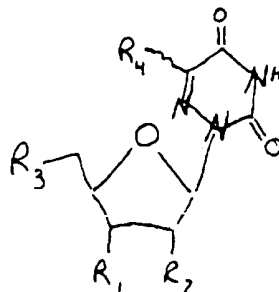
wherein R1 is hydrogen, hydroxyl, a phosphate linkage, or a phosphate group; R2 is hydrogen or hydroxyl;

35 R3 is hydrogen, hydroxyl, a phosphate linkage, or a phosphate group; and

R4 is a coupled labeled moiety.

169

47. A compound having the formula:



wherein R1 is hydrogen, hydroxyl, a phosphate linkage, or a phosphate group;
 R2 is hydrogen or hydroxyl;
 R3 is hydrogen, hydroxyl, a phosphate linkage, or a phosphate group; and
 R4 is a coupled labeled moiety.

48. A method of identifying differences in nucleic acid levels between two or more nucleic acid samples, said method comprising the steps of:

(a) providing one or more oligonucleotide arrays each comprising probe oligonucleotides wherein said probe oligonucleotides comprise a nucleotide sequence or subsequences selected according to a process selected from the group consisting of a random selection, a haphazard selection, a nucleotide composition biased selection, and all possible oligonucleotides of a preselected length;

(b) providing software describing the location and sequence of probe oligonucleotides on said array;

(c) hybridizing said nucleic acid samples to said one or more arrays to form hybrid duplexes between nucleic acids in said nucleic acid samples and probe oligonucleotides in said one or more arrays that are complementary to said

arrays, and analyzing said hybridizing indicate differences in said nucleic acid levels.

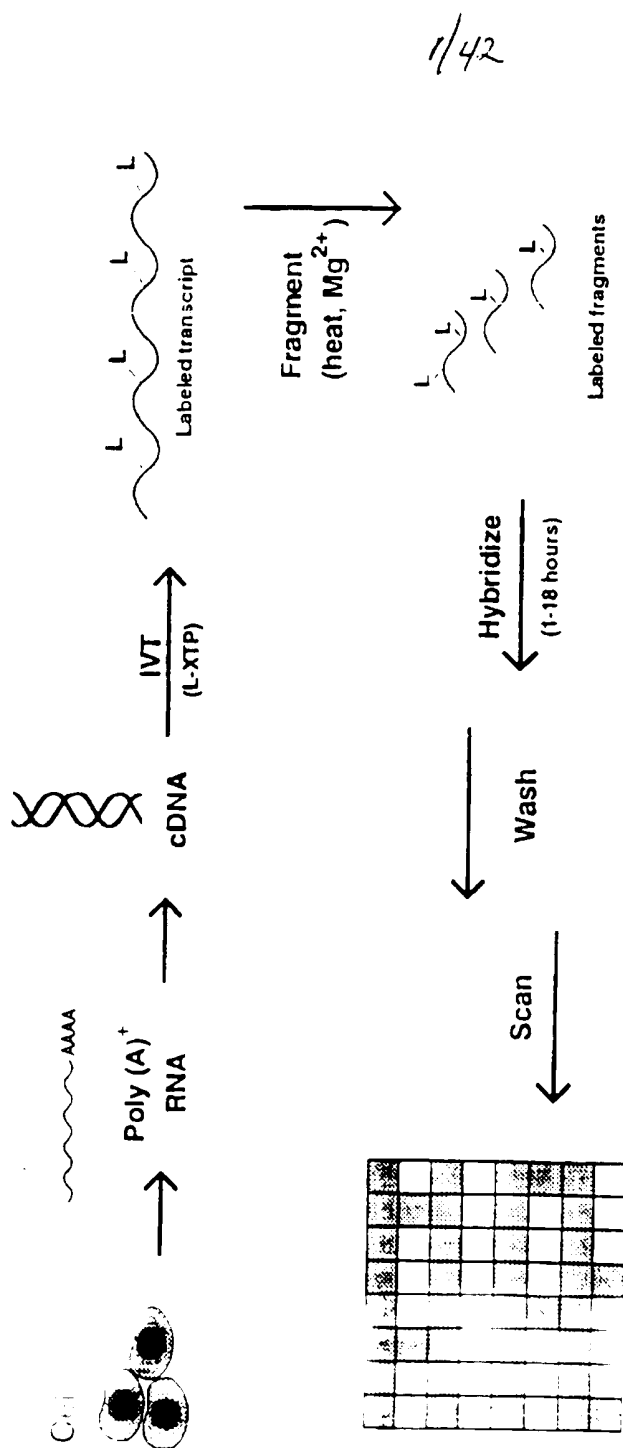


FIG. 1

2/42

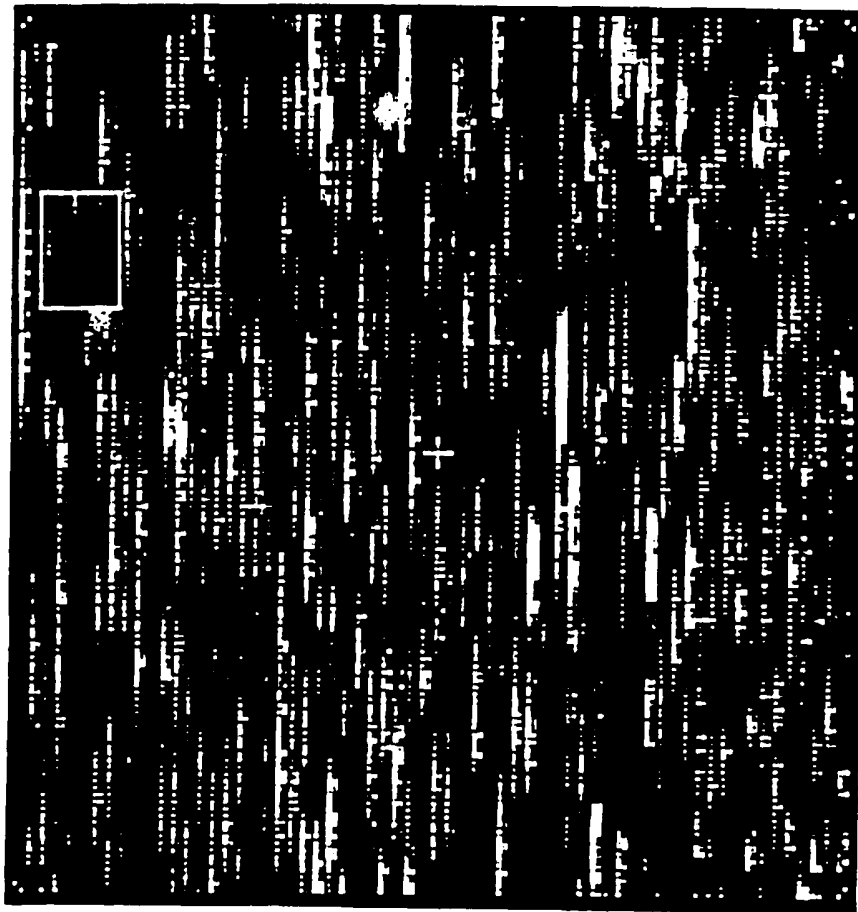


FIG. 2A

3/42



FIG. 2C

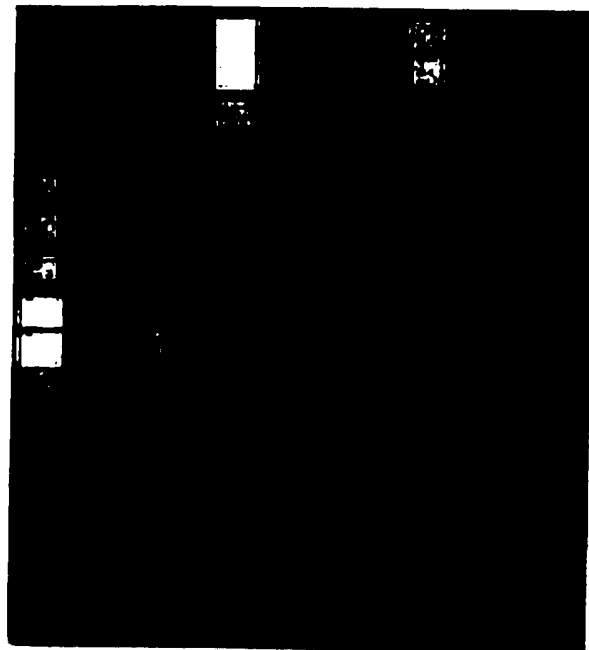
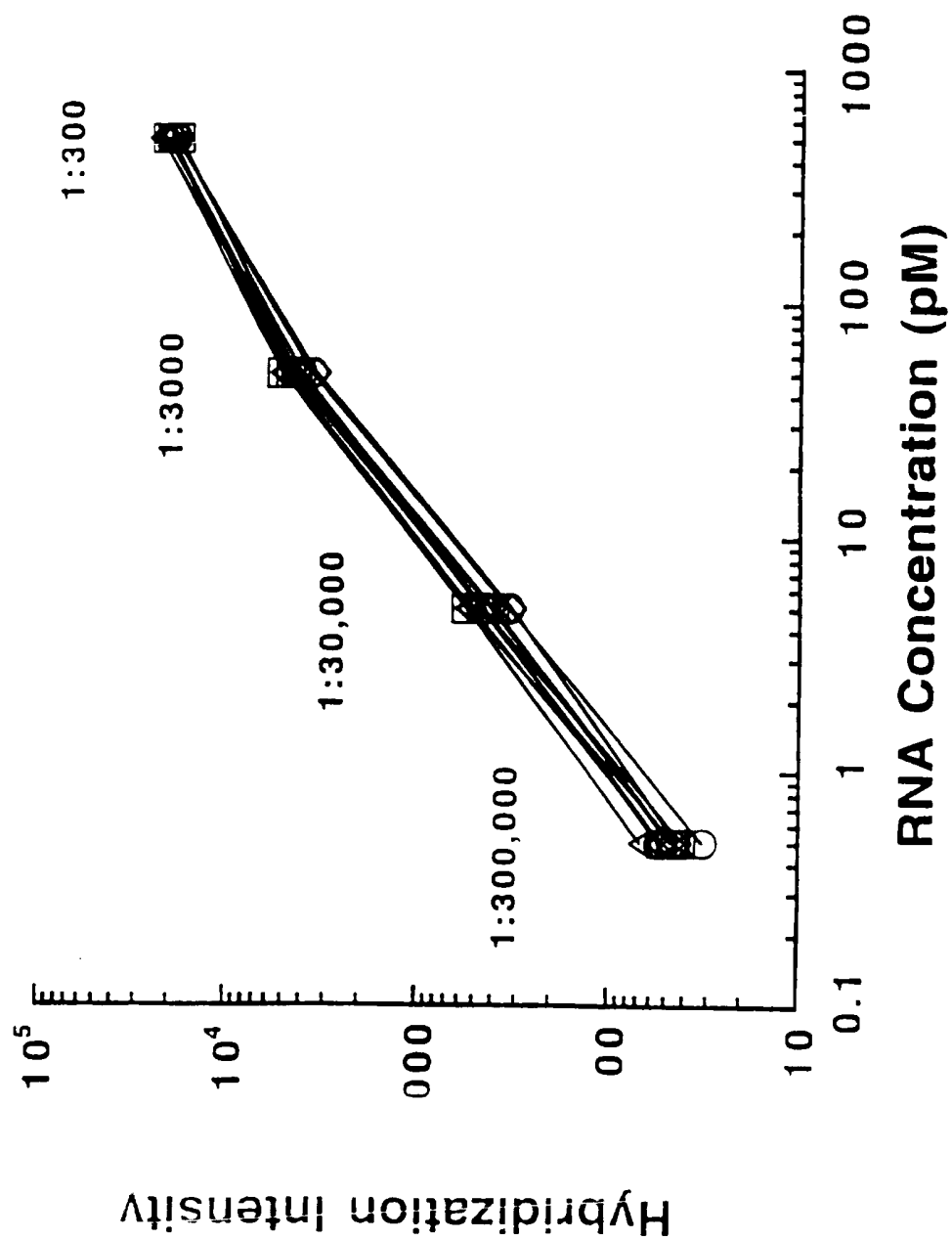


FIG. 2B

PM — ▲
MM — ▲

4/42

FIG. 3



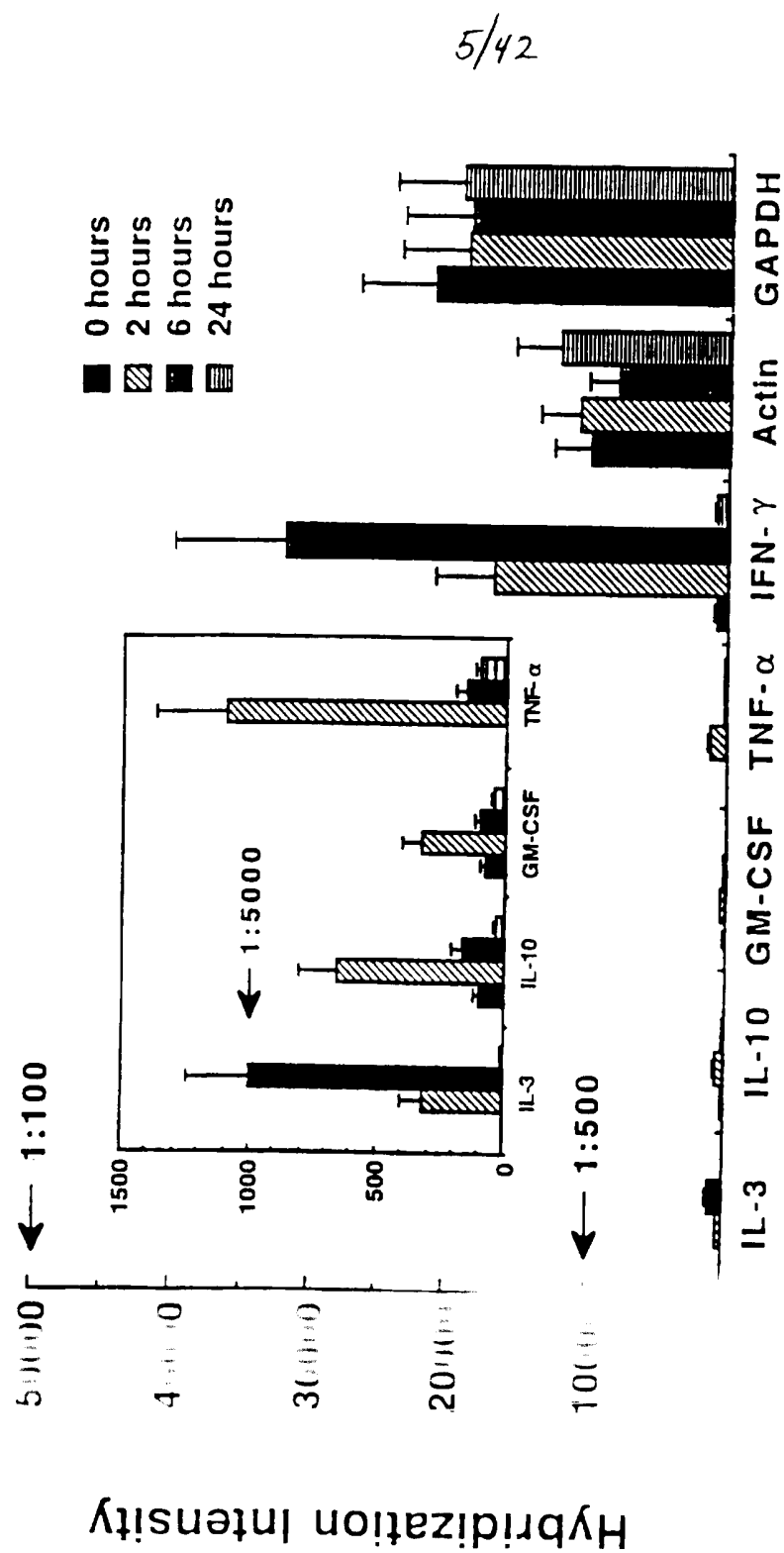


FIG. 4

6/42

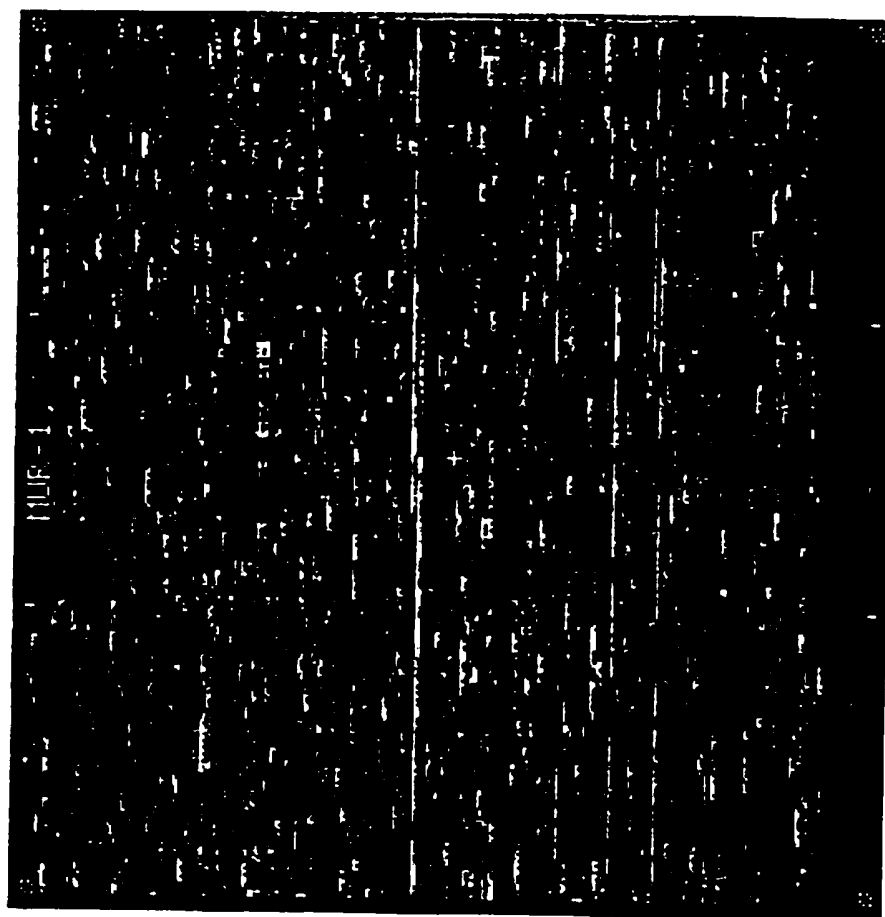


FIG. 5

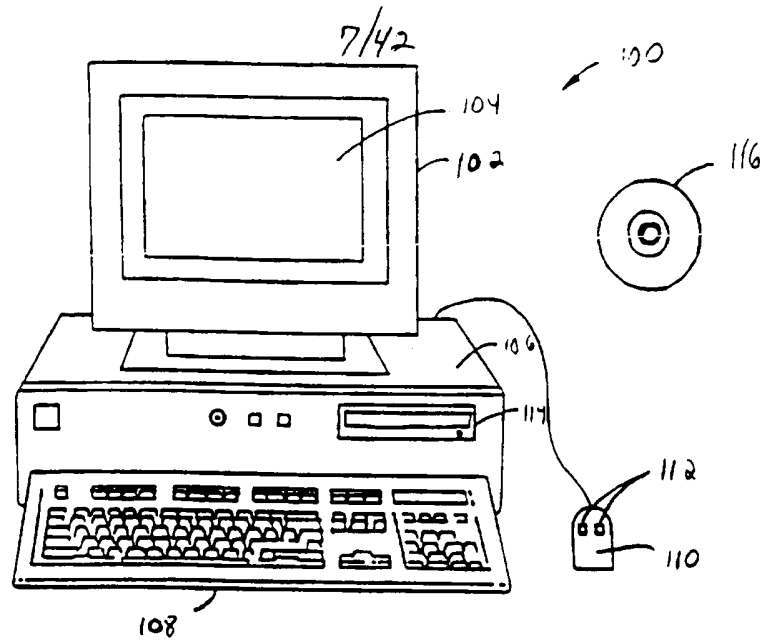


FIG. 6

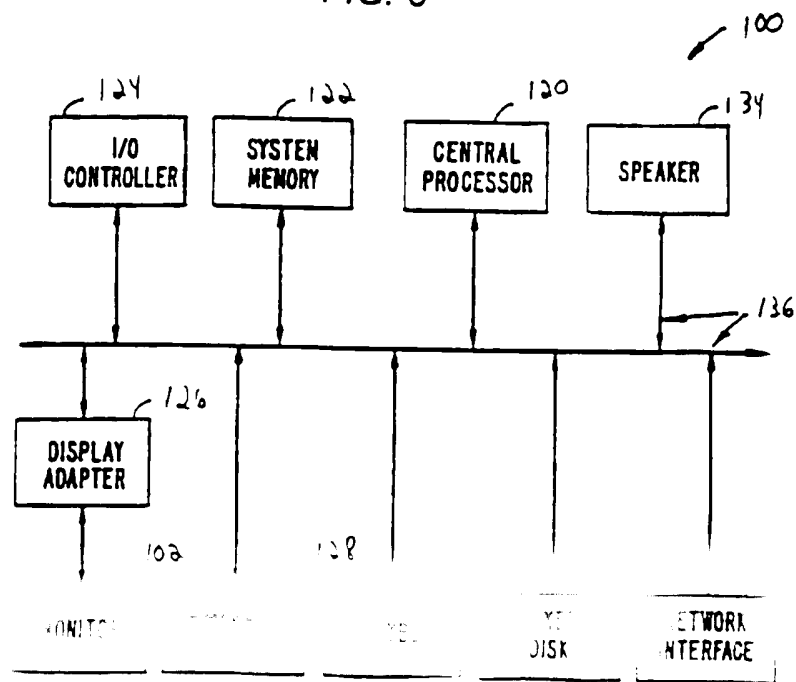


FIG. 7

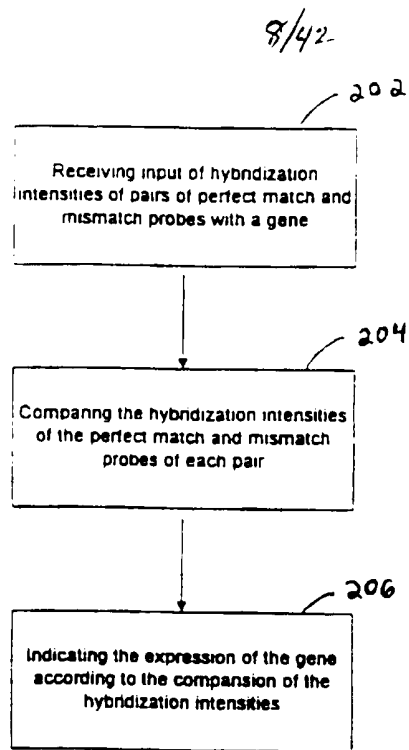


FIG. 8

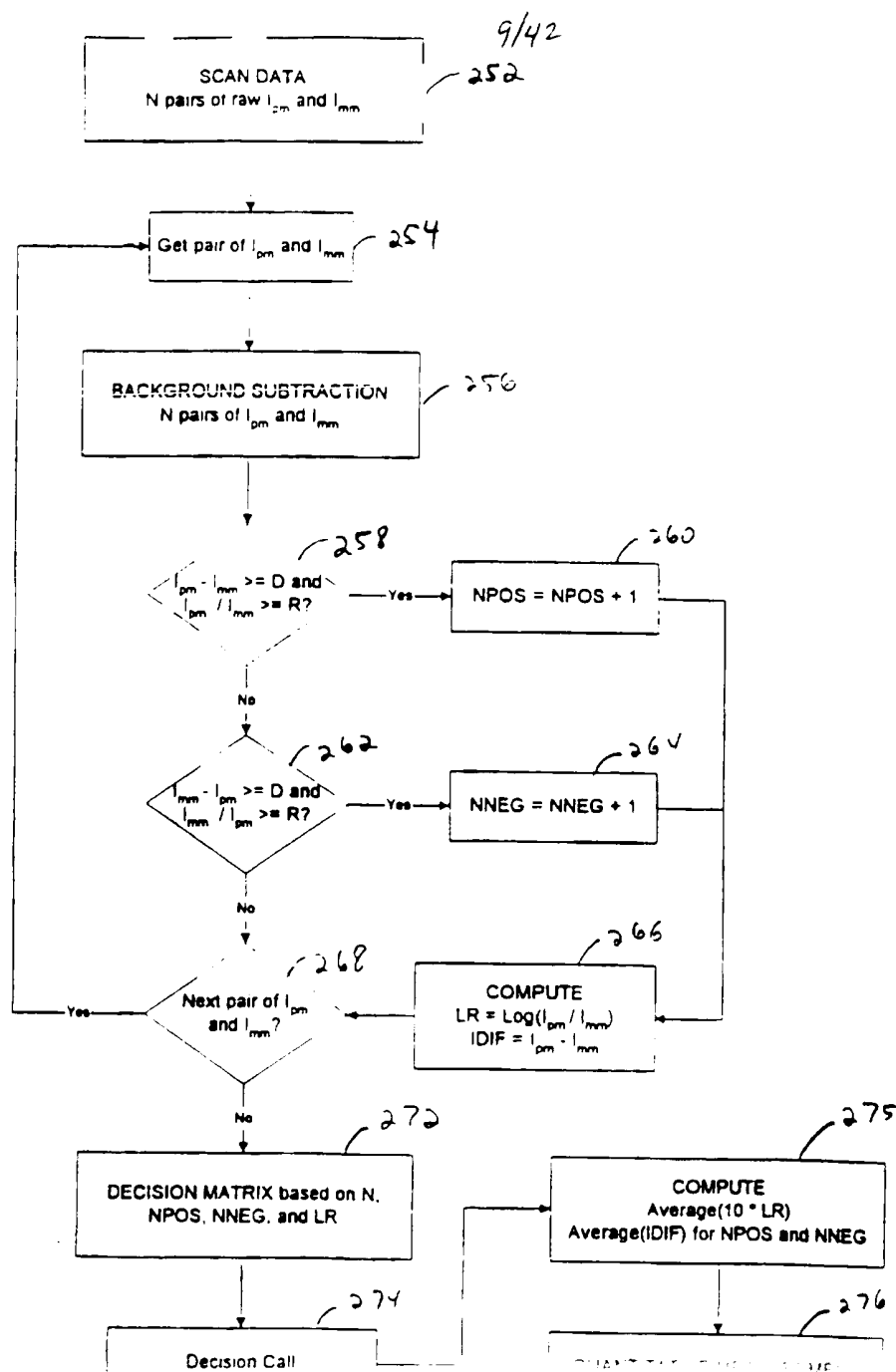
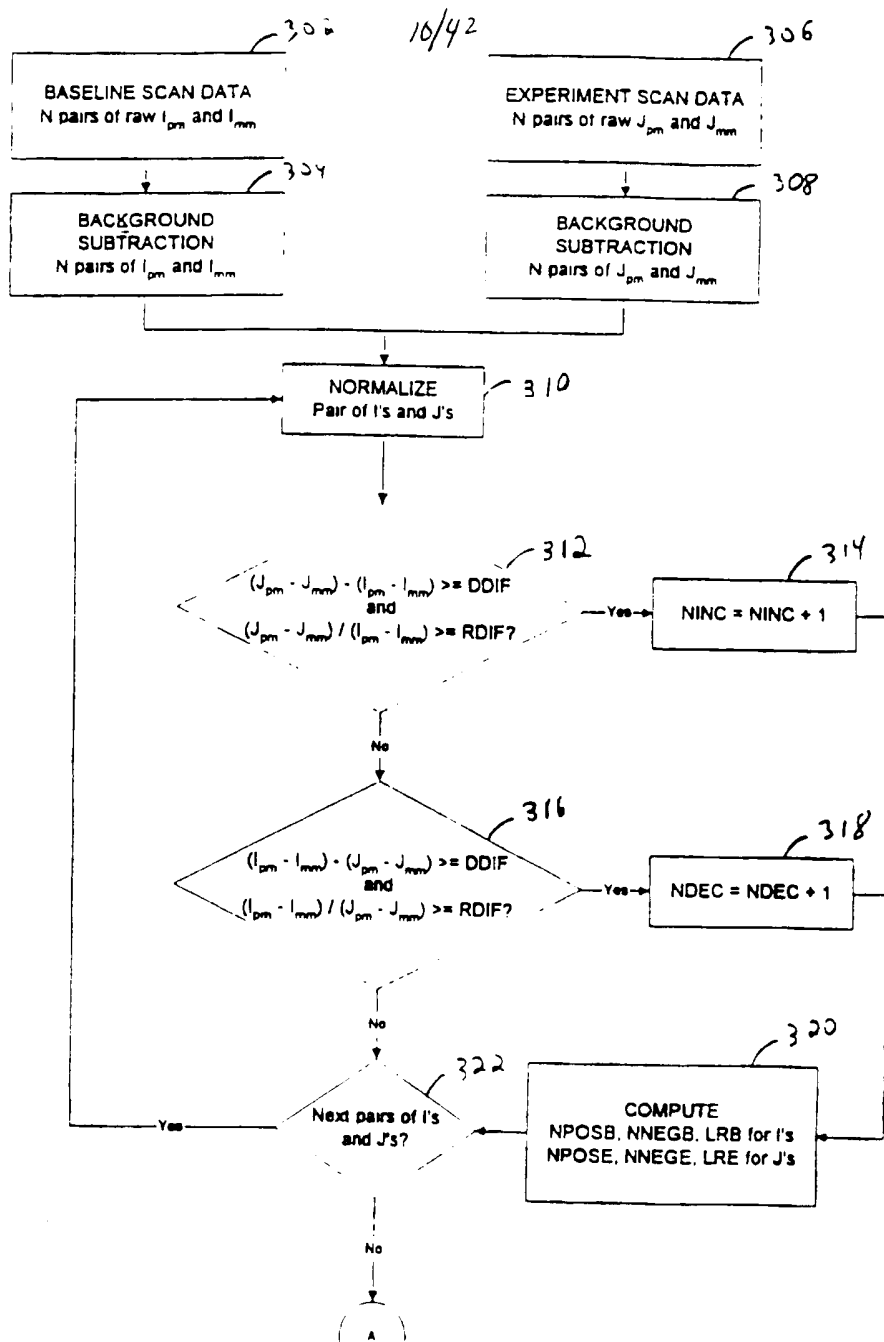


FIG. 9



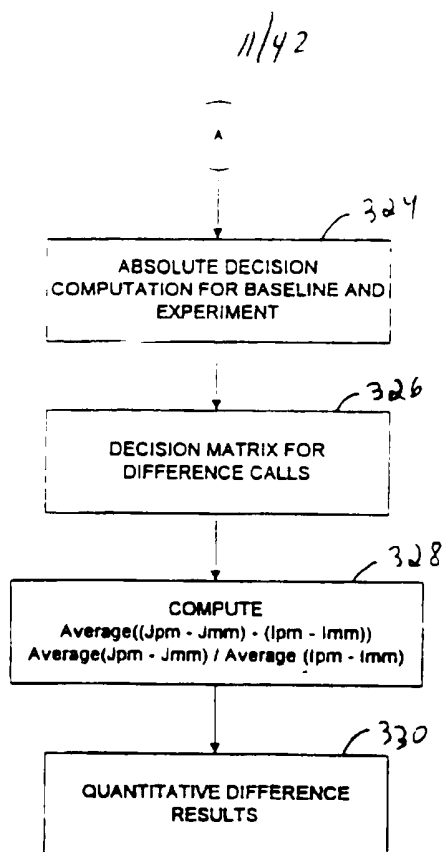
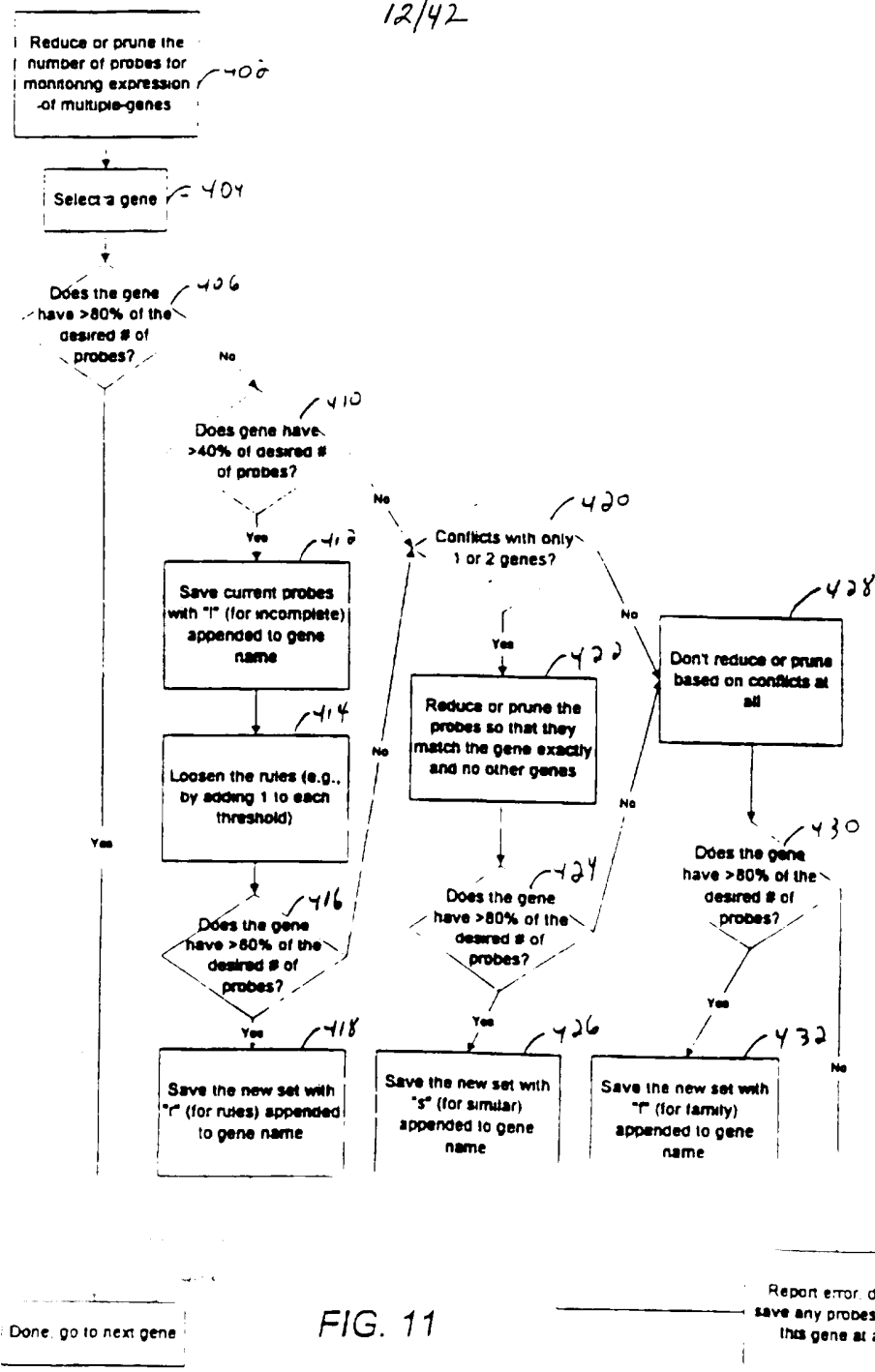


FIG. 10B



13/42

Discrimination With Ligation

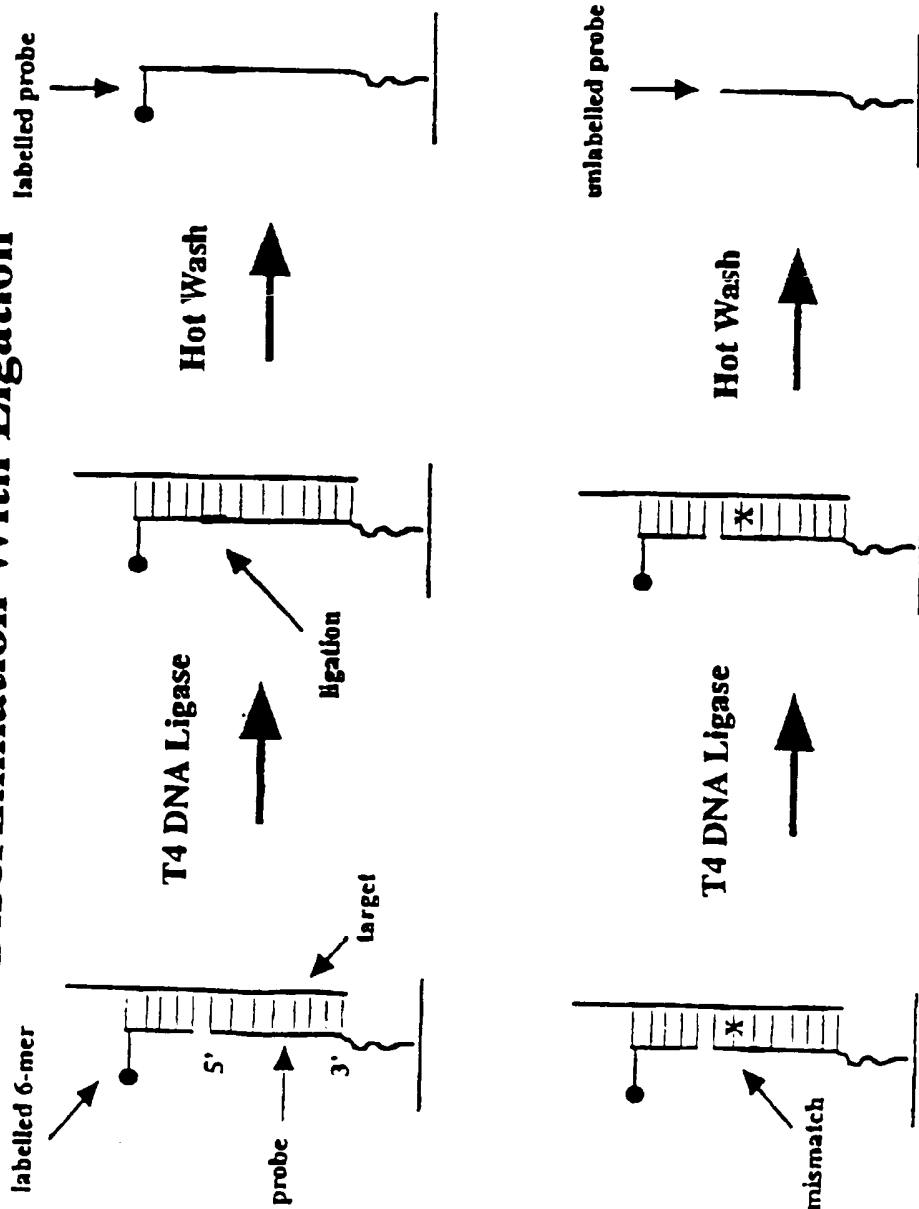
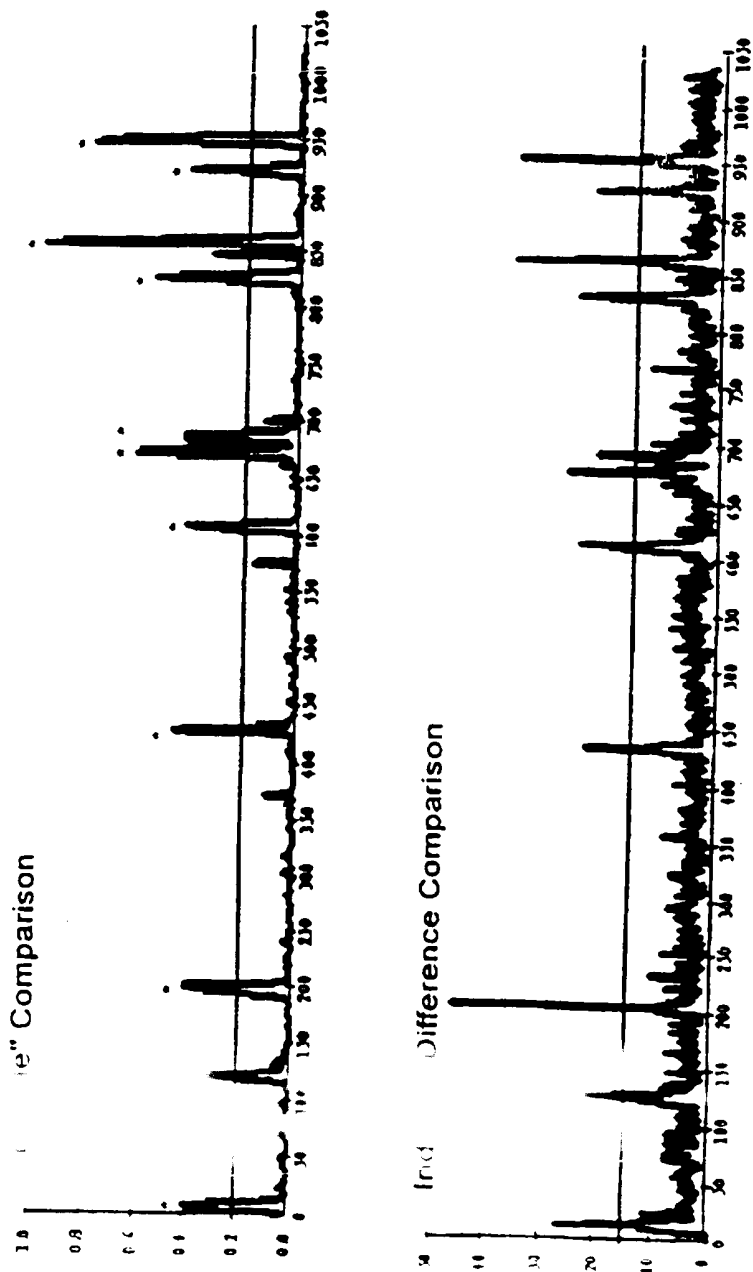


Fig. 12

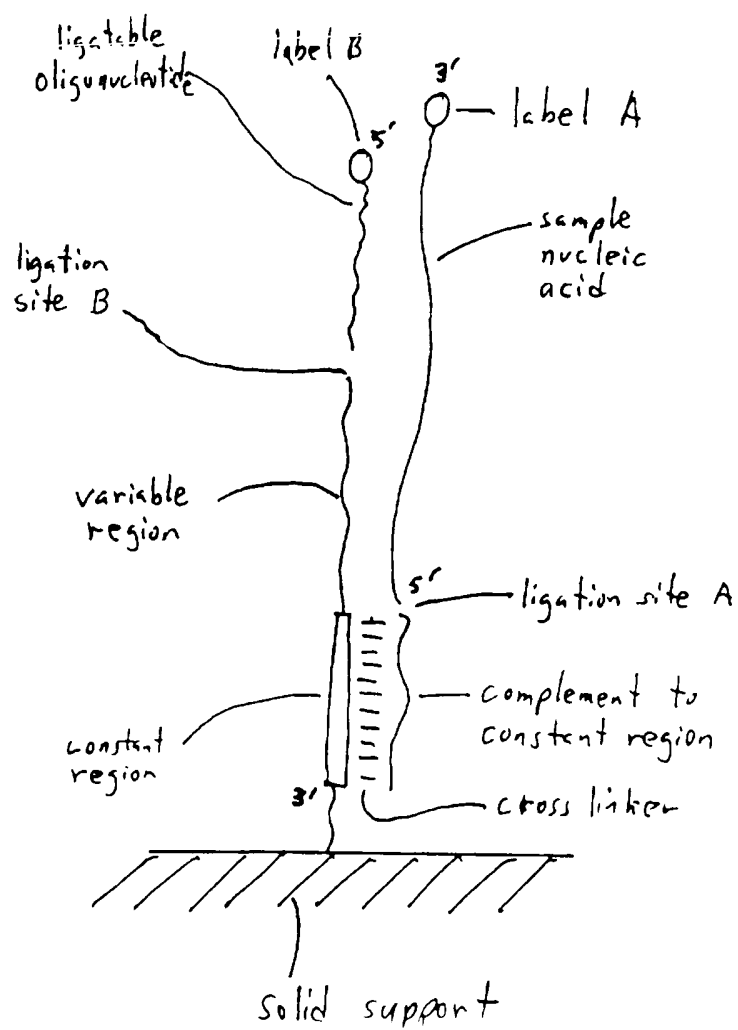
14/42

Fig. 3: Mutation detection using comparisons between a reference target and a sample target



Results: N positives, all 11 mutations (indicated by *) are detected in this 1041 bp HIV DNA fragment.

15/42



g. 2a

Fig 13b

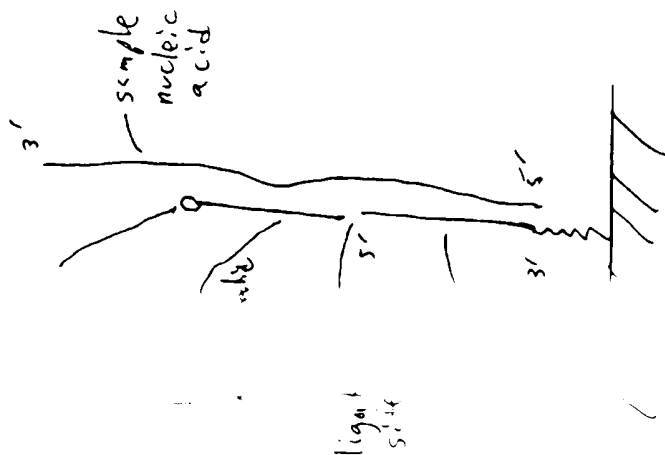
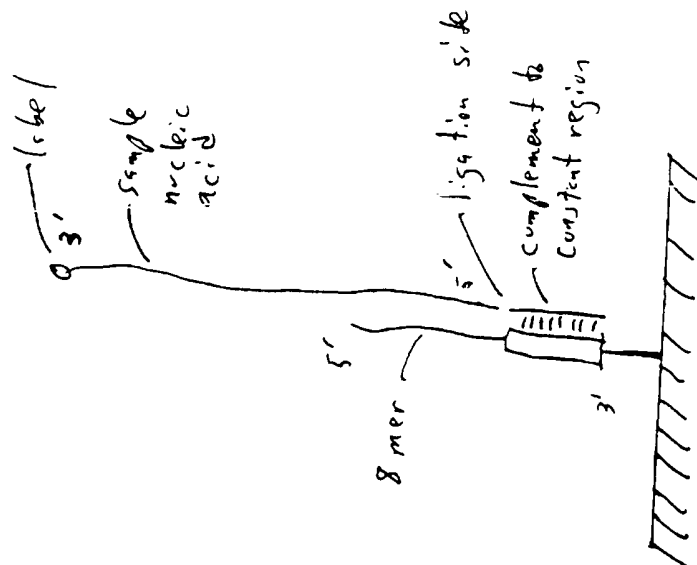
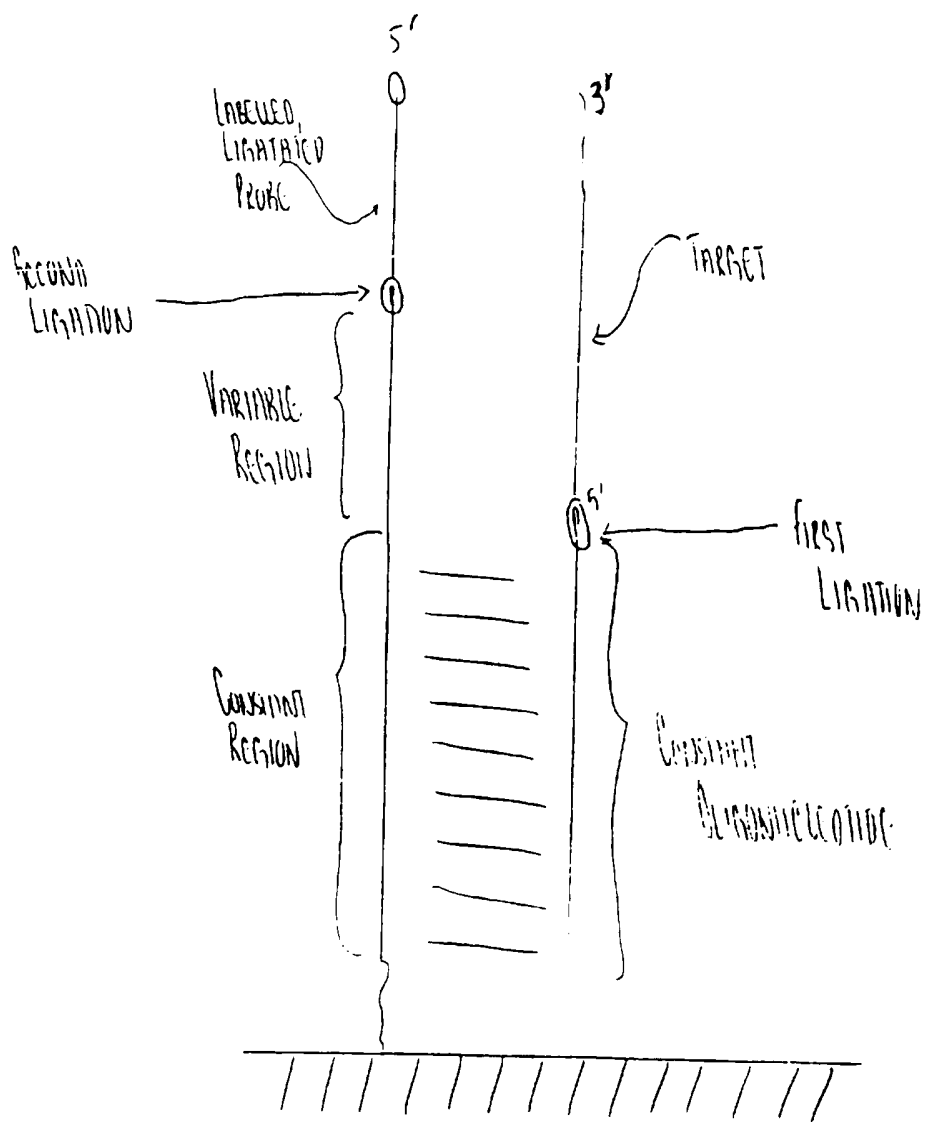


Fig 13c



16/42-

17/42



18/42

Fig. 14a

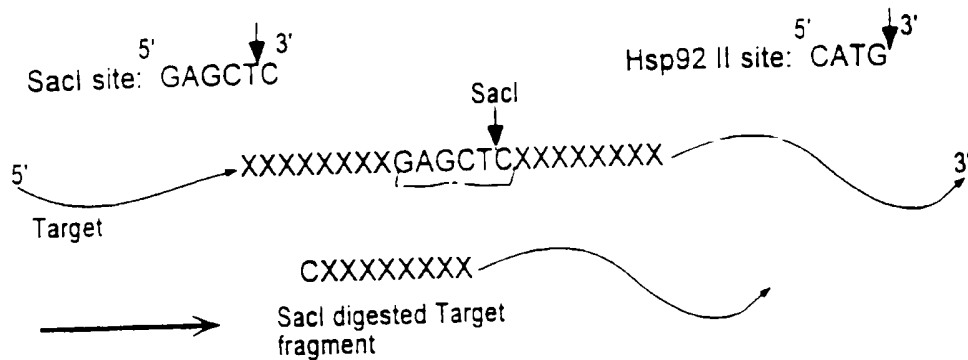
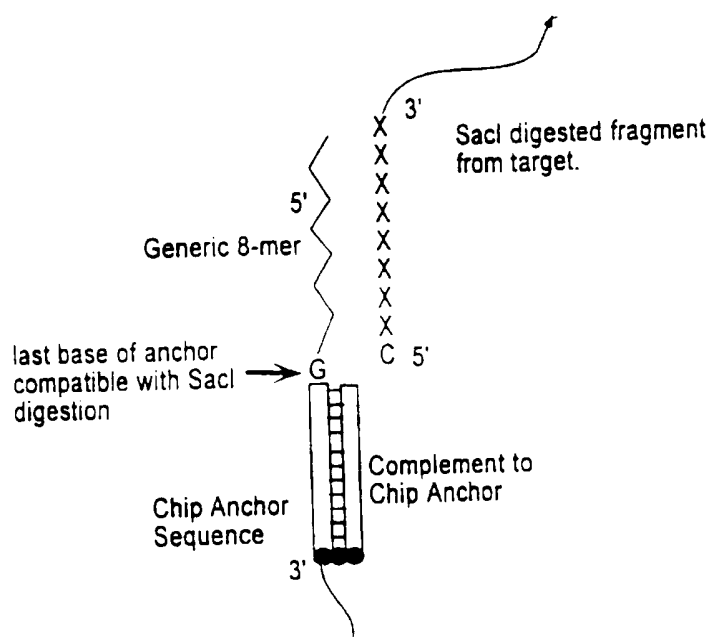


Fig. 14b



20/42

Fig. 15a

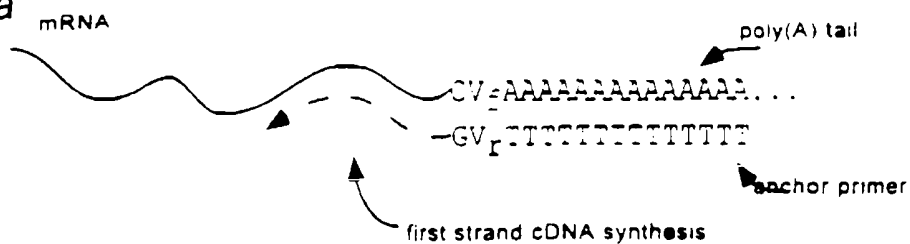


Fig. 15b

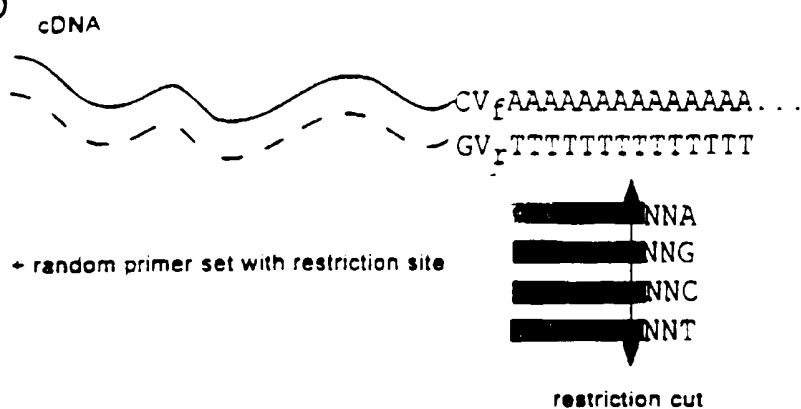
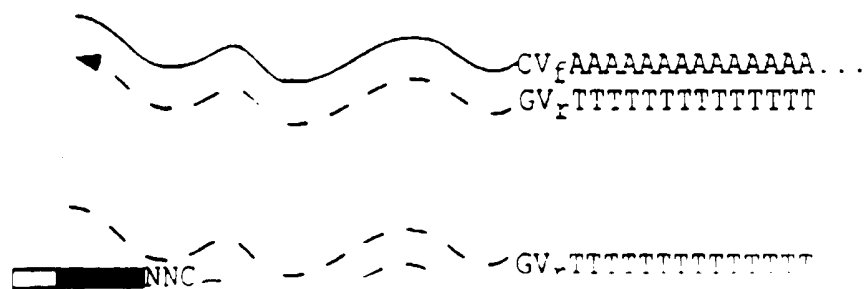


Fig. 15c

random primed PCR of cDNA



21/42

Fig. 15d Restriction digest PCR products.

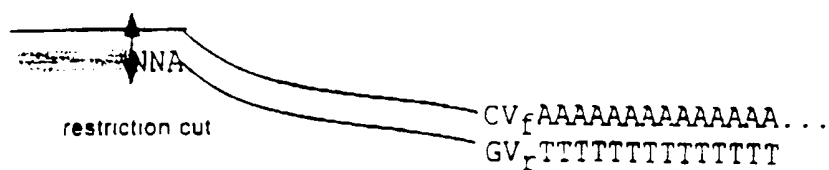
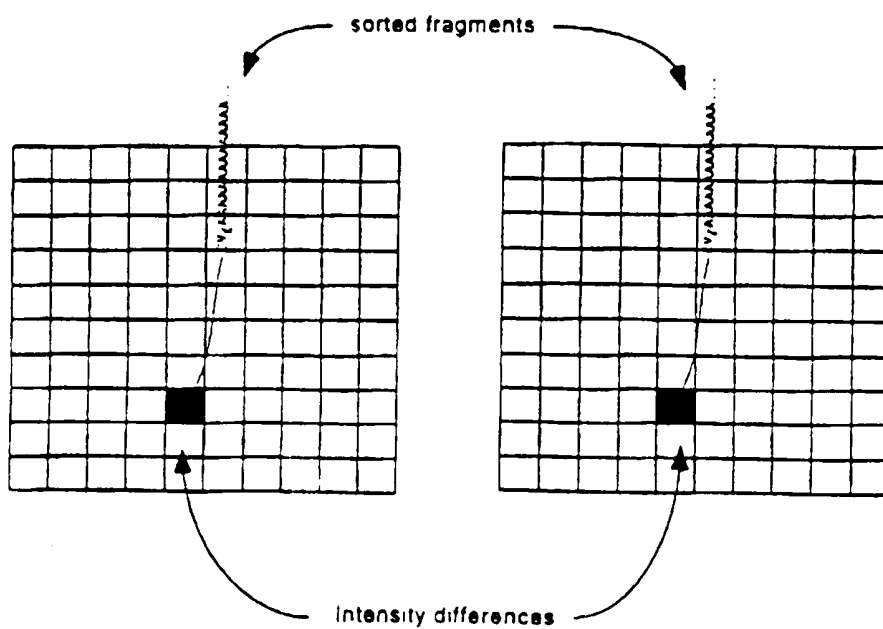
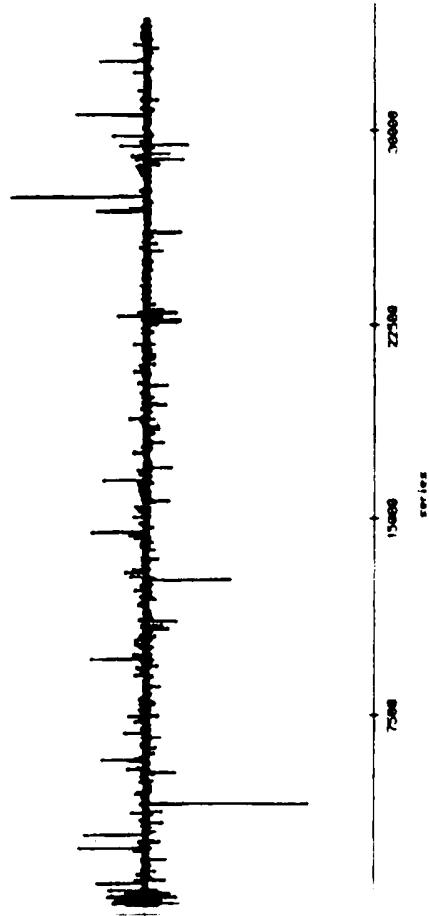


Fig. 15e Sort fragments by 5' ends on Generic Ligation GeneChip.



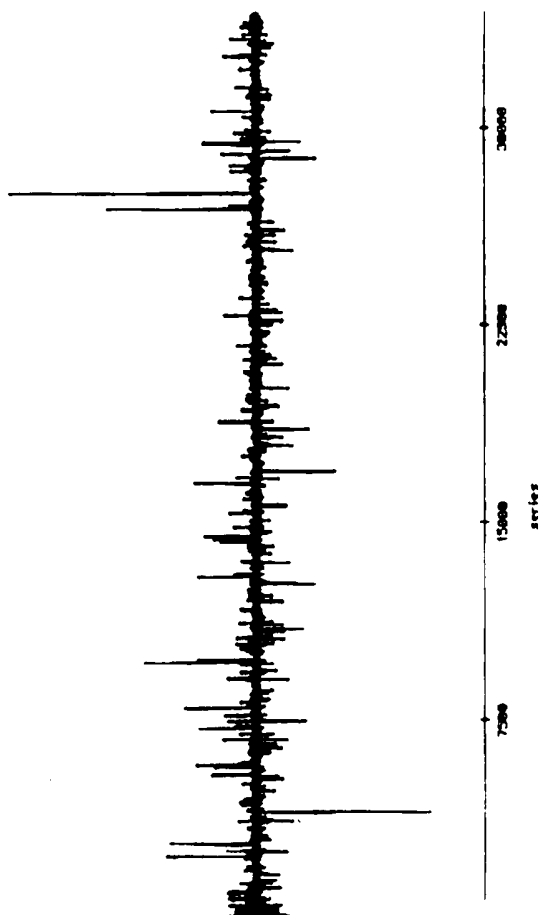
1-11-98

22/42



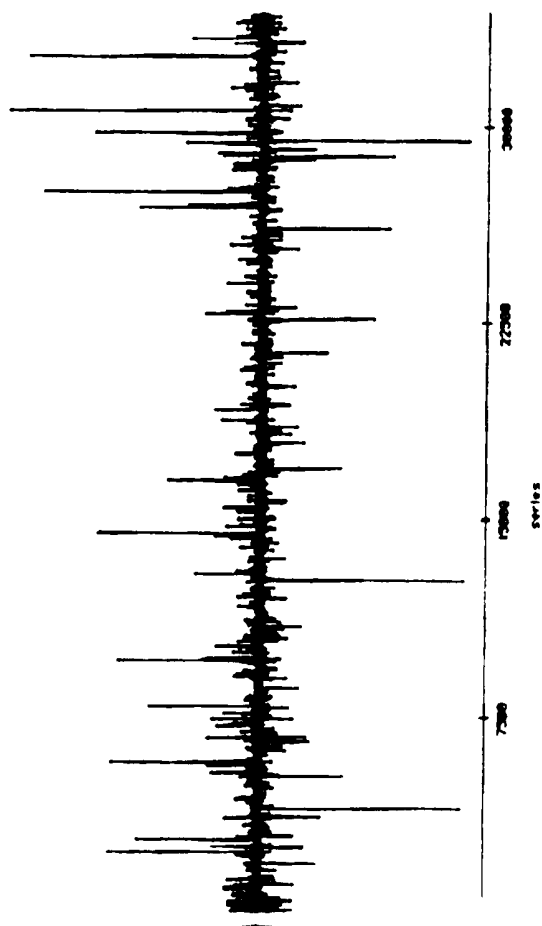
Sample 1 vs Sample 1 - Absolute Differences
(Replinate 1 vs Replinate 2)

Fig. 16a



Sample 2 vs Sample 2 - Absolute difference
(Replicate 1 vs Replicate 2)

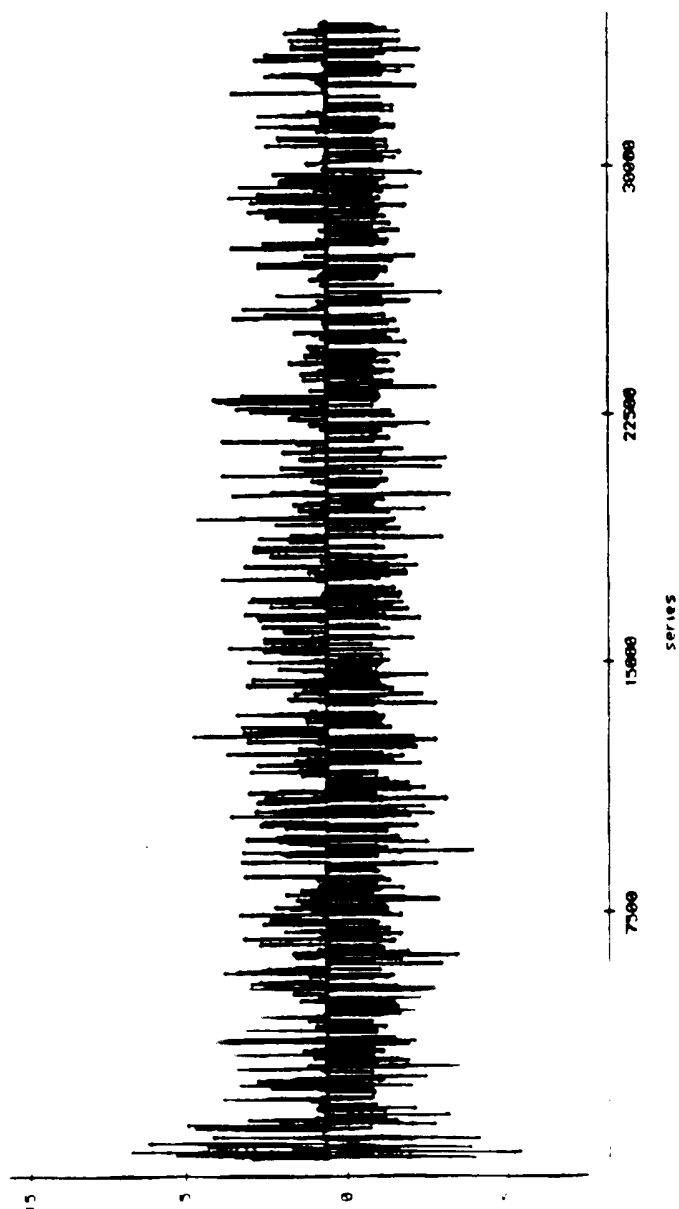
Fig. 16b



Sample 1 vs Sample 2 - absolute Difference
for two replicates for two replicates

Fig. 16c

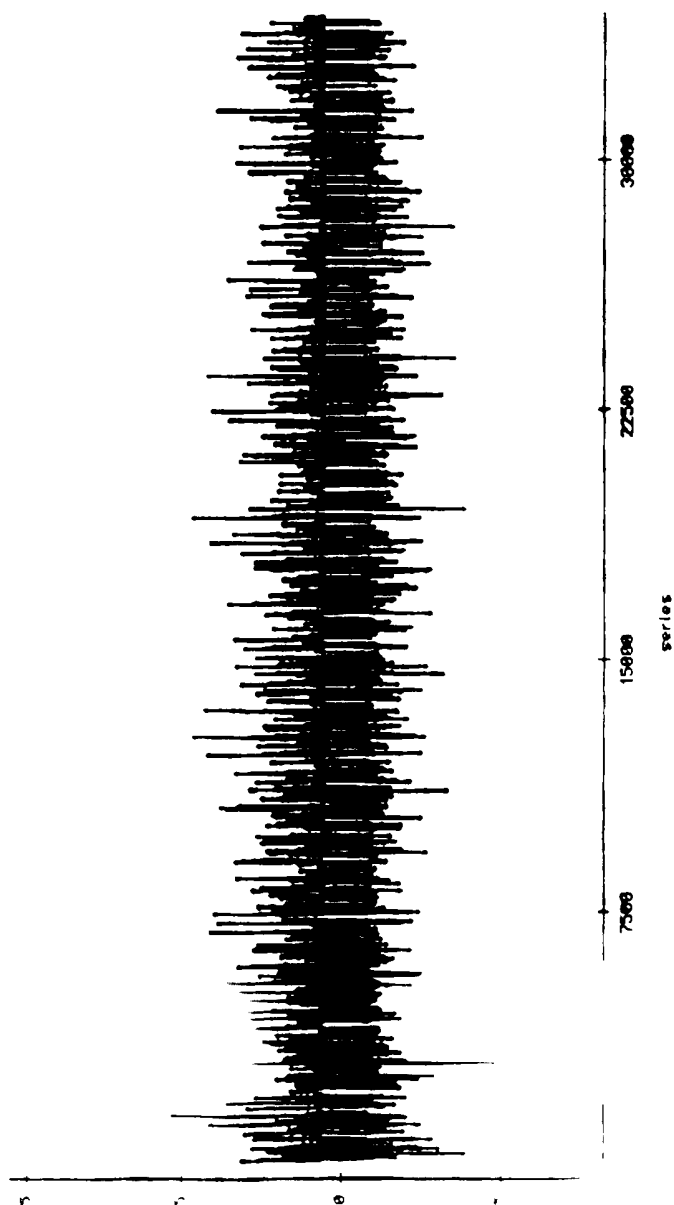
25/42



Sample 1 vs Ratio,
(kup1) (kup2)

Fig. 17a

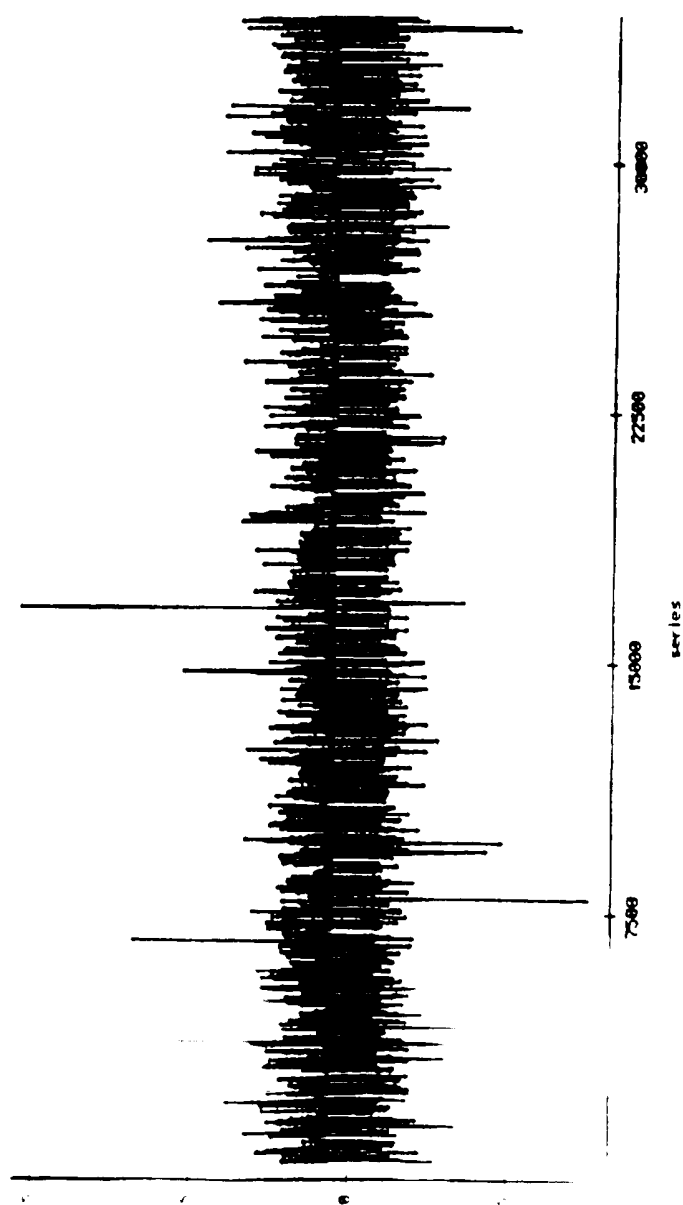
26/42



Sample 2 vs Sample2 - Ratio,
(Rep1) (Rep2)

Fig. 17b

27/42



Sample 1 vs Sample 2 - Ratios
(two Replicates) (two Replicates)

Fig. 17c

28/42

Post-Fragmentation End Labelling: CIAP Treatment

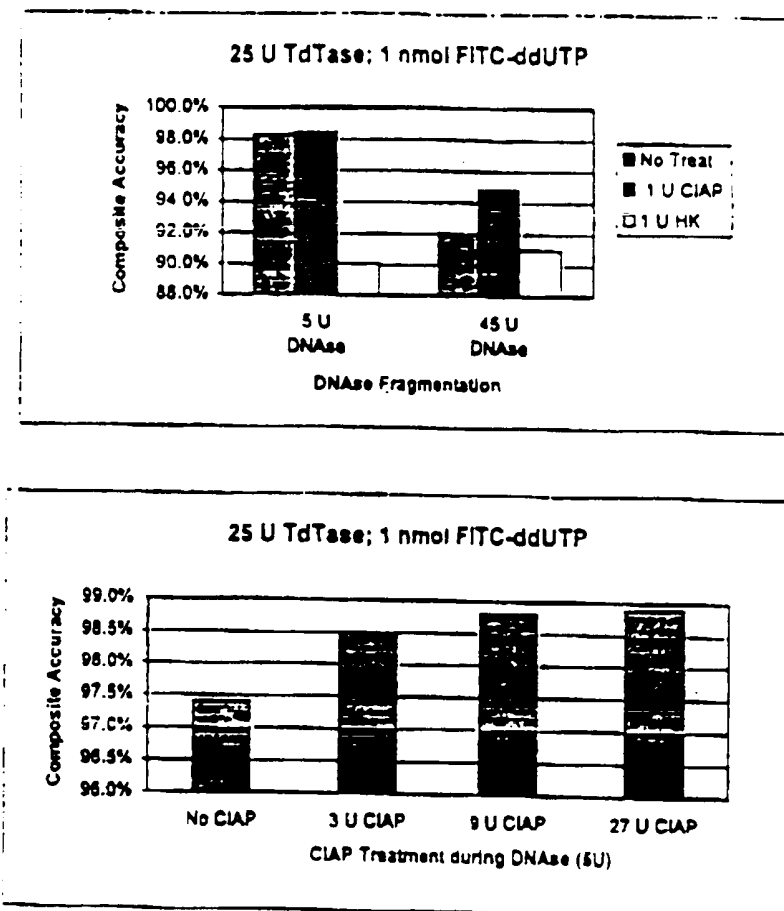


Fig. 18

29/42

Post-Hybridization End Labelling on the Chip

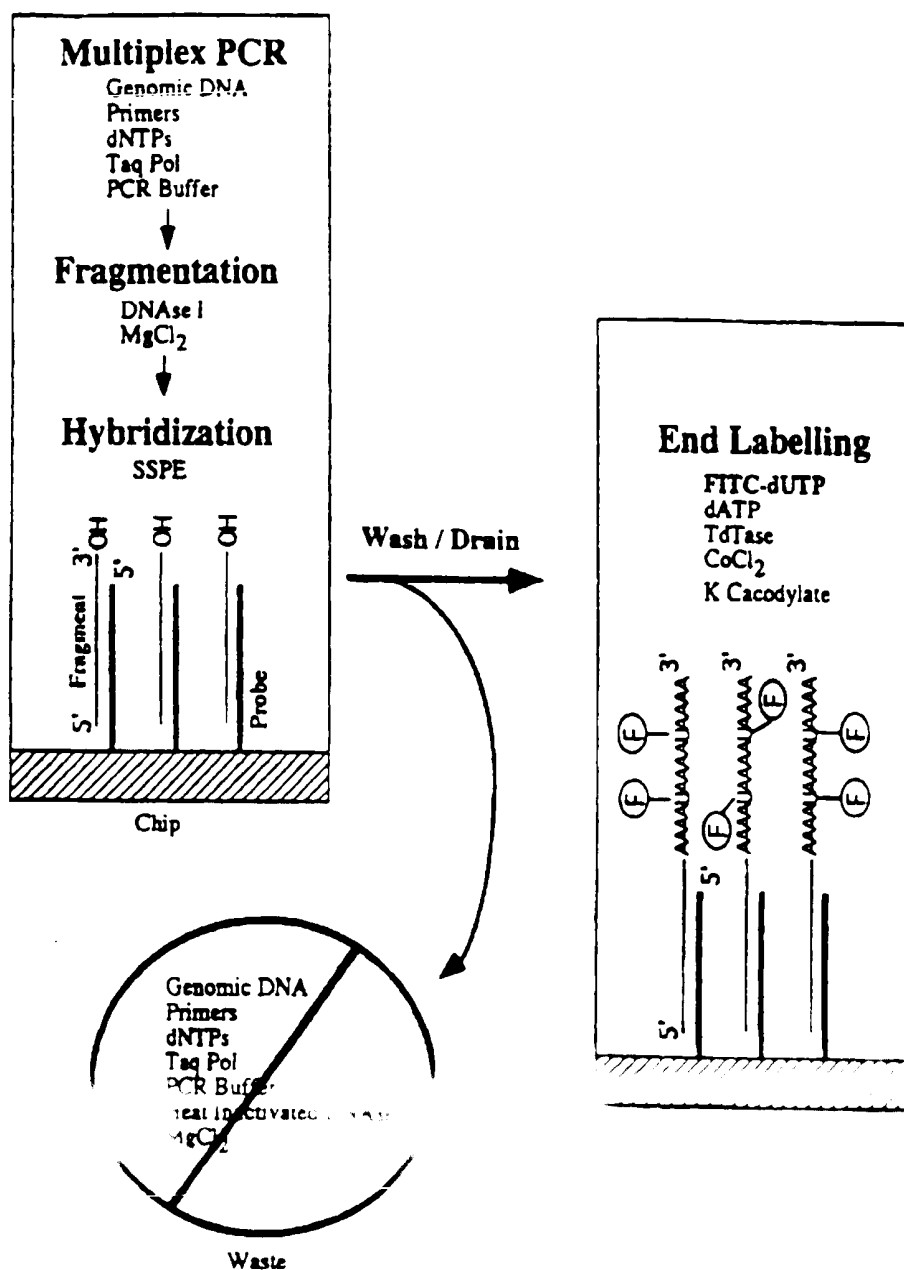


Fig. 19

Pre-react Chip prior to Hybridization and Labelling

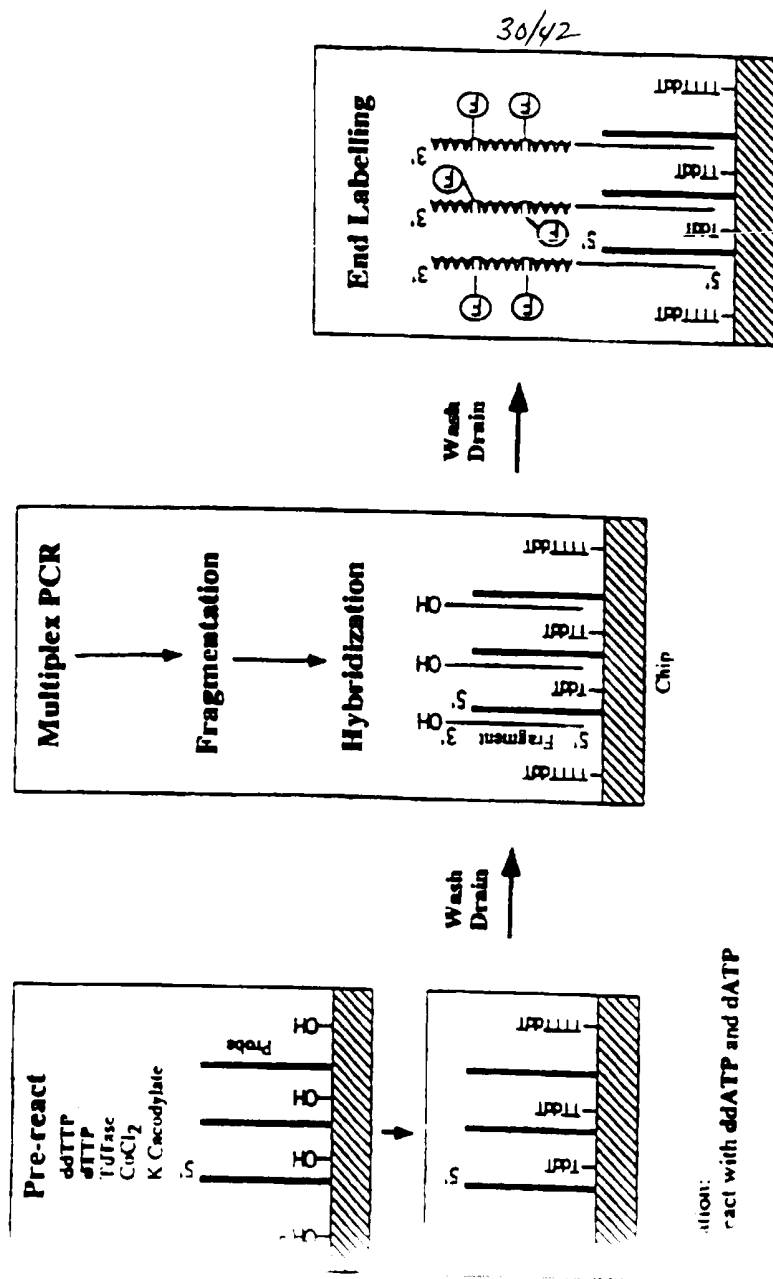


Fig. 20

31/42

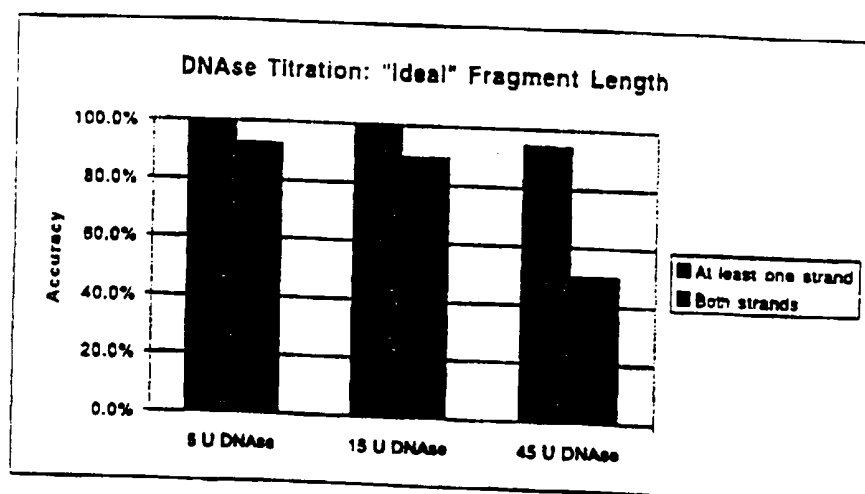


Fig. 21

32/42
Oligo dT Labelling on the Chip

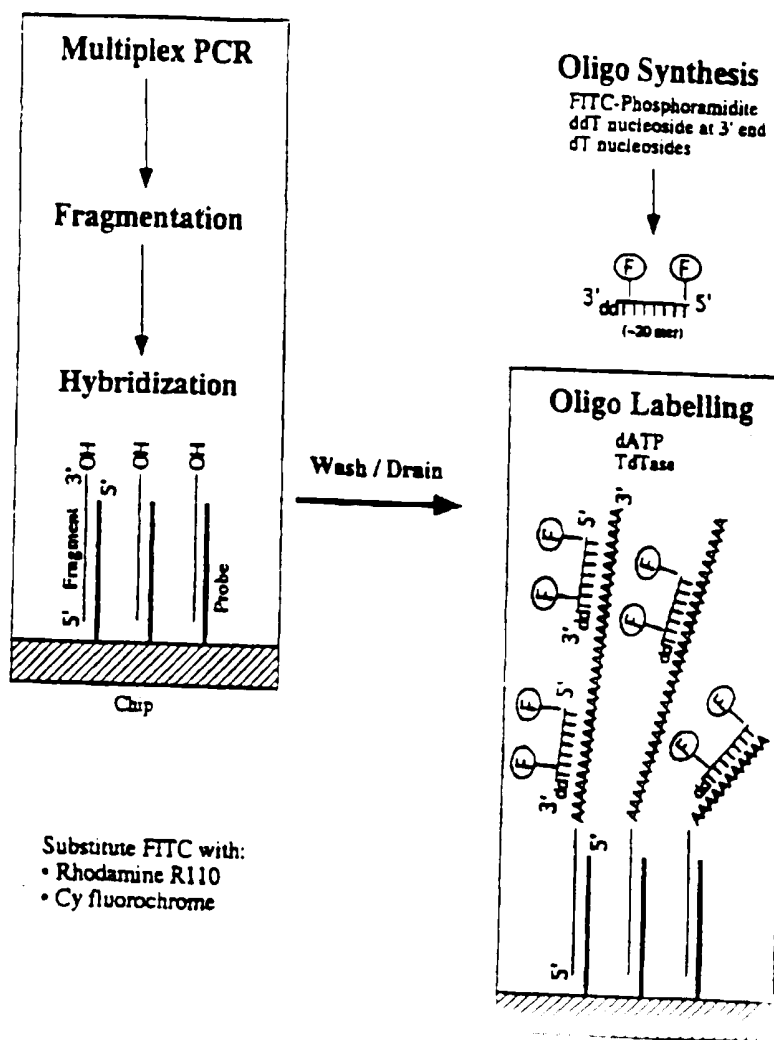
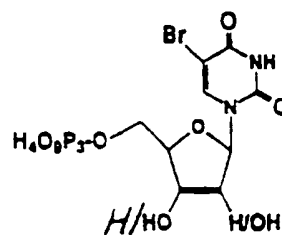


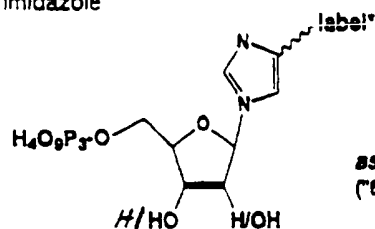
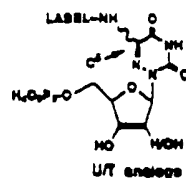
Fig. 22

33/42
Fig. 23a

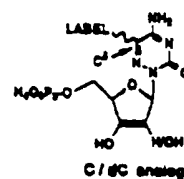
LABELING REAGENTS



imidazole

ss-triazine-3,5[2H,4H]-dione
("6-aza-pyrimidine") nucleotides.

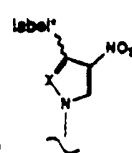
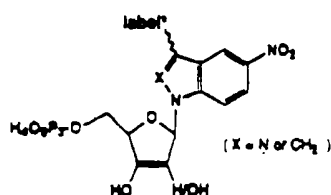
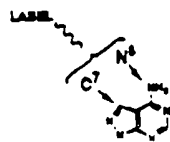
U/T analogs



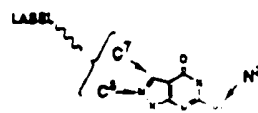
C/dC analogs

nitro-indole/indazole

nitro-pyrrole/pyrazole

pyrazolo[3,4-d]pyrimidine
("8-aza-7-deazapurine") nucleotides

A analogs



U analogs

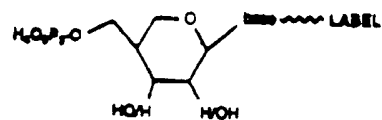
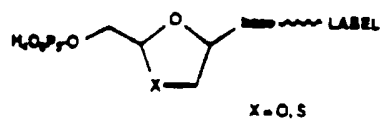
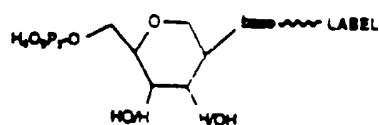
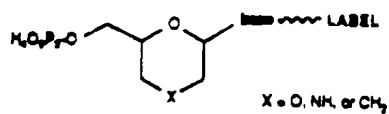
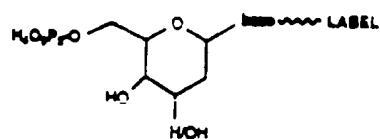
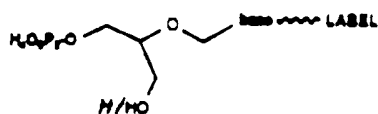
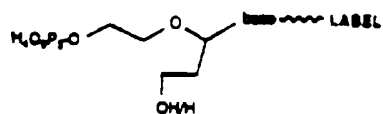
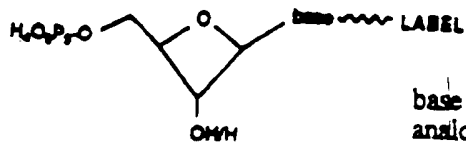
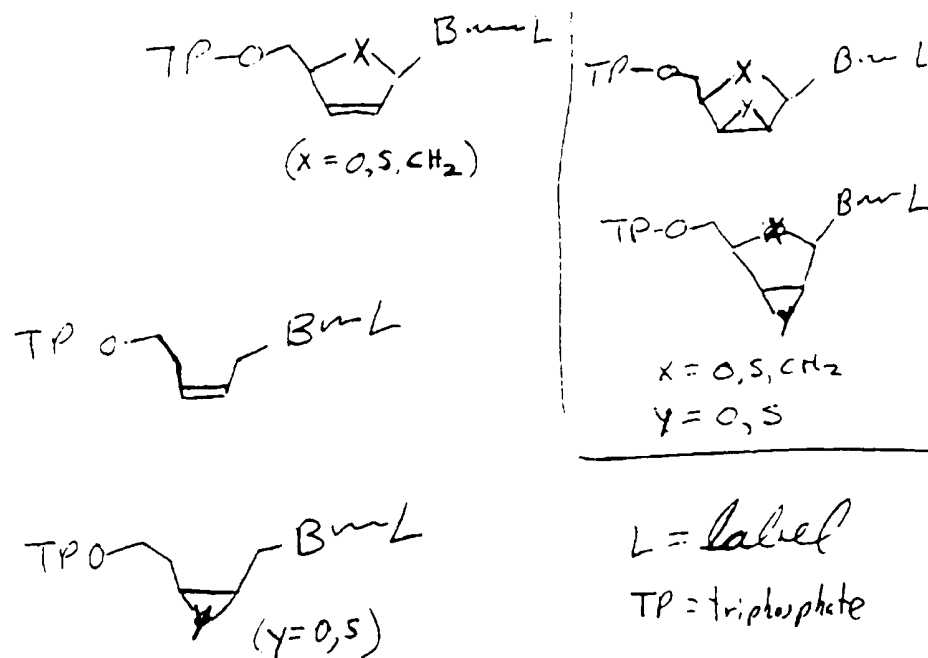
34/42
Fig 23b

Fig 23c



base = heterocyclic moiety (eg.
analogs thereof;
linker = linker

BE = biotinylated ethyl-ester

35/42
Fig 23d

36/42

Fig 24 Resequencing a target DNA molecule with a set of generic n-mer tiling probes.

i.e. 4-mer probes:

Target: 5' **TGACATAGGACAGCGAAGGGA** 3' . . .

Probe 1: **ACTG** 5'

Probe 2: **CTGT**

Probe 3: **TGTA**

Probe 5: **GTAT**

Probe 5: **TATC**

Probe 5: **ATCC**

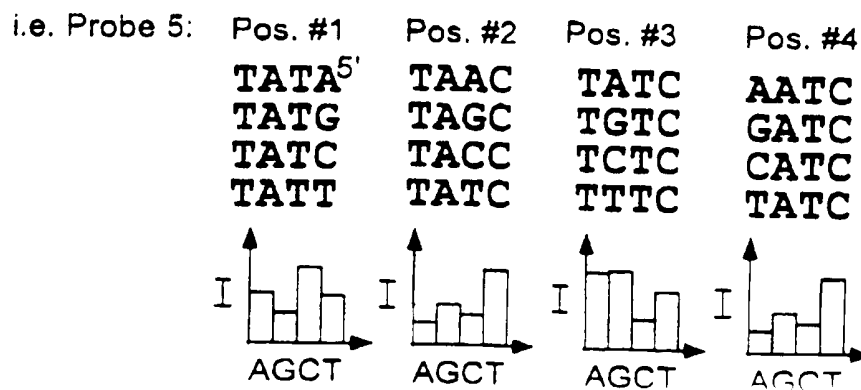
Probe 5: **TCCT**

Probe 5: **CCTG**

Probe 9: **CTGT** . . . etc

Fig. 25 Four Electronic Tiling Arrays are present on a 4-mer Generic Array:

(4x3 = 12 "nearest neighbors" for each probe)



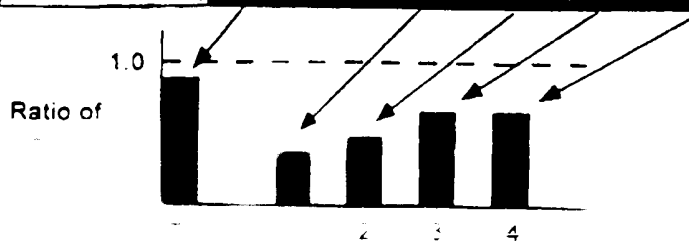
37/42

Fig 26 Base-Calling at the 8th position in the target.

		8 th	
Target:	TGACATAGGACAGCGAAGGGA...		
Probe 5, Pos. 1	3' TATC 5'	Base-Call	T
Probe 6, Pos. 2	ATCC		G
Probe 7, Pos. 3	TCCT		C
Probe 8, Pos. 4	CCTG		C
			<u>C</u>
			C is the winner!

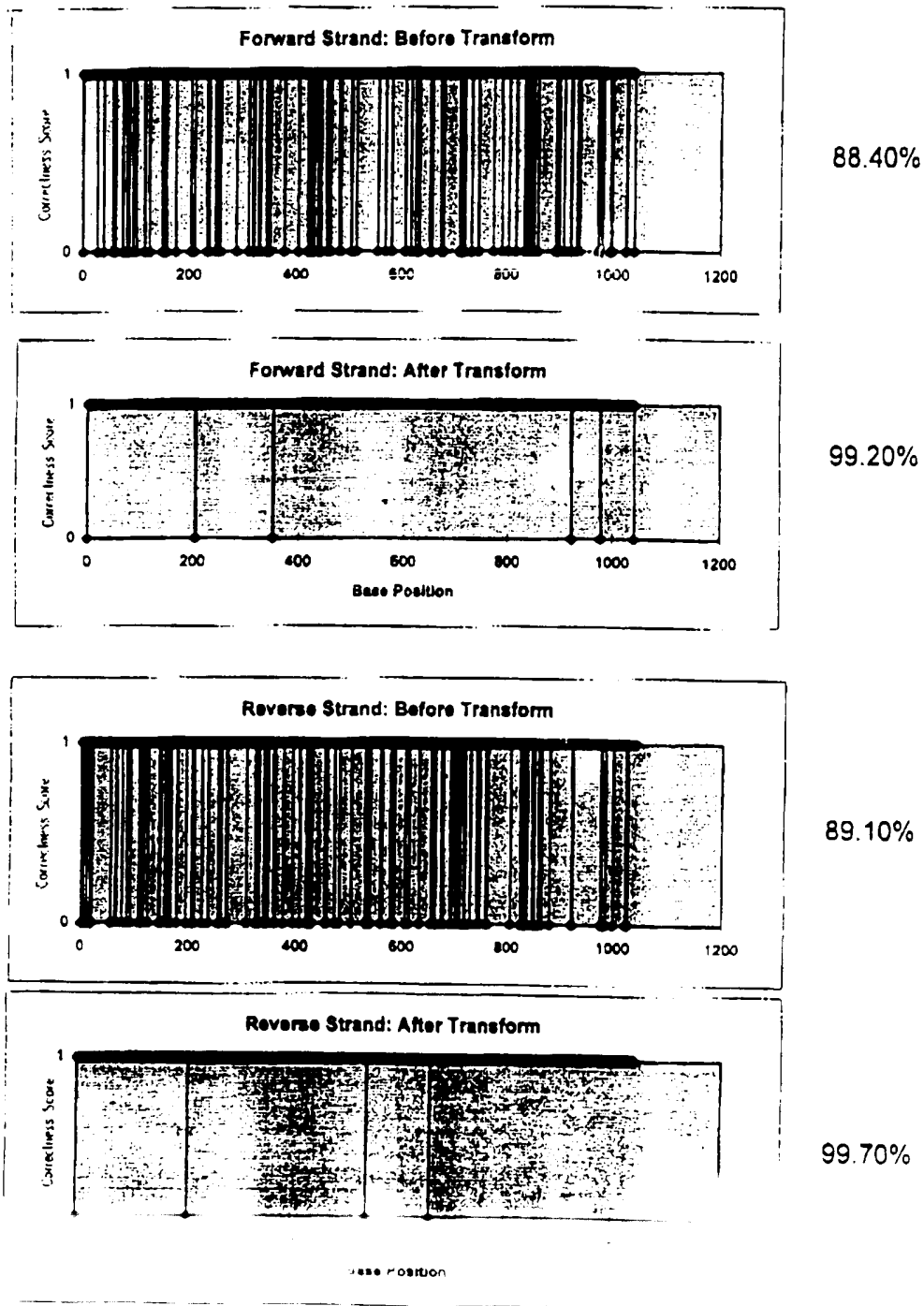
Fig 27 Base Vote Table:

Base Position	Base Identity	Base Vote	Correctness Score Total	Correctness Score #1	Correctness Score #2	Correctness Score #3	Correctness Score #4
5	T	T	1	1	0	1	0
6	A	A	1	1	1	1	1
7	T	T	1	0	1	0	1
9	C	G	0	0	0	0	0
10	T	T	1	1	0	1	0
11	G	G	1	0	1	1	1
12	T	T	1	0	1	1	1
13	C	C	1	1	0	0	1
14	G	G	1	0	1	1	1
(10)	Totals						



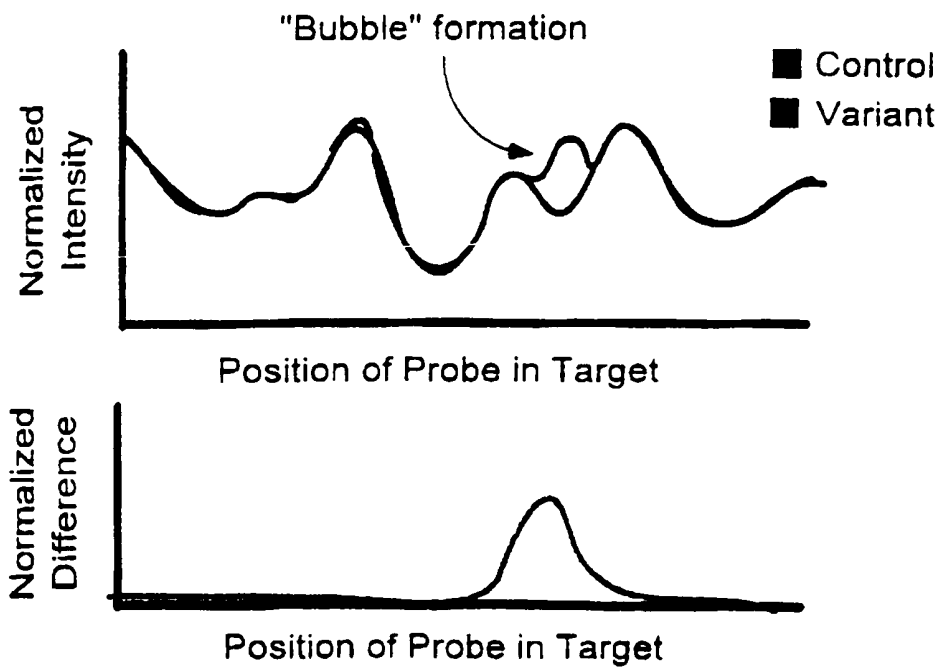
38/42

Fig. 28 Effect of applying correctness score transform to HIV data.



39/42

Fig 23 Mutation Detection by Intensity Comparisons



Algorithms:

$$I_{\text{normalized}} = I_{\text{probe}} / (\sum I_{\text{NN}})$$

$$I_{\text{Difference}} = \frac{(I_{\text{normalized,variant}} - I_{\text{normalized,control}})}{(I_{\text{normalized,variant}} + I_{\text{normalized,control}})}$$

- Locally Normalized Intensities track well.

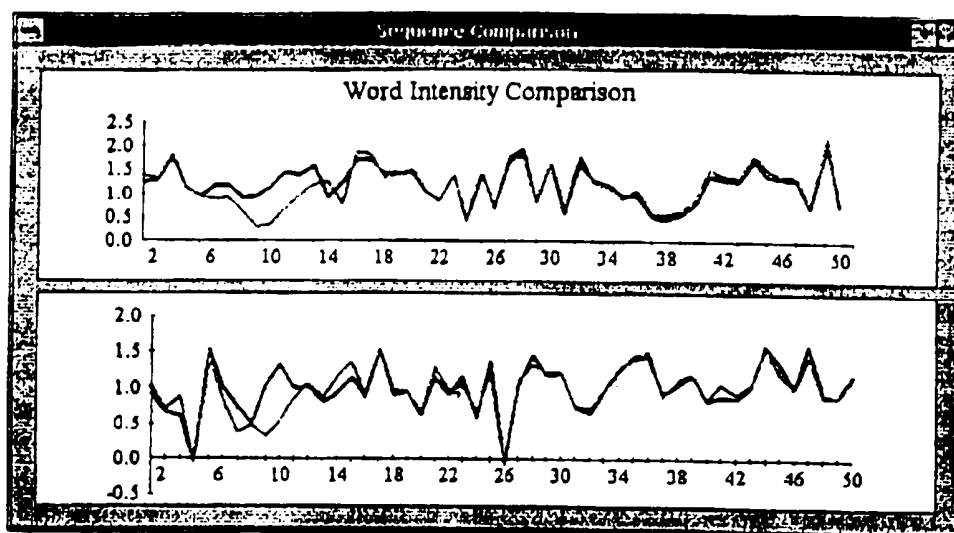
- Local Normalization

Standard

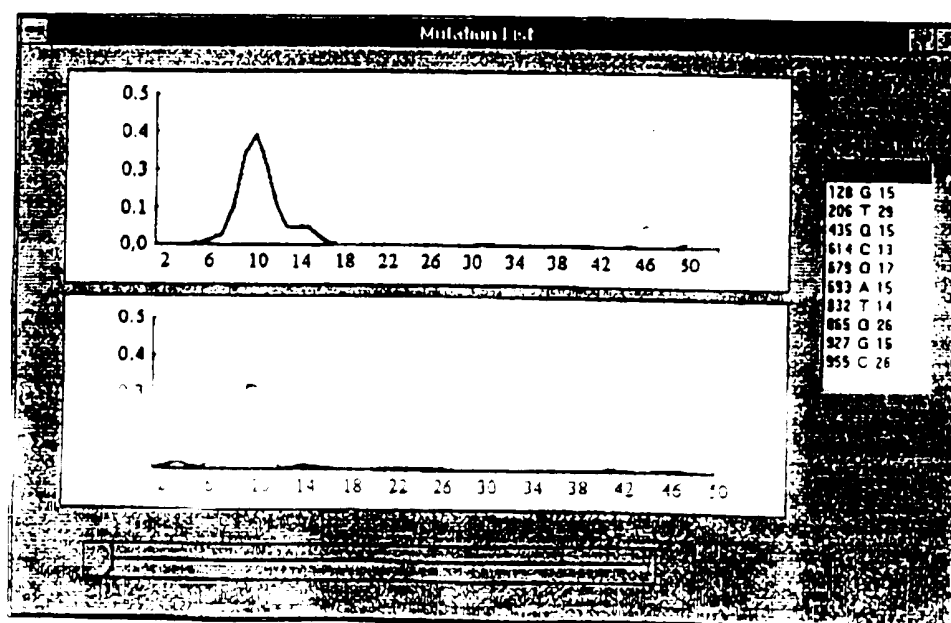
40/42

Fig. 30 Bubble Formation detection of mutation in HIV genome

Normalized Intensity Comparison:

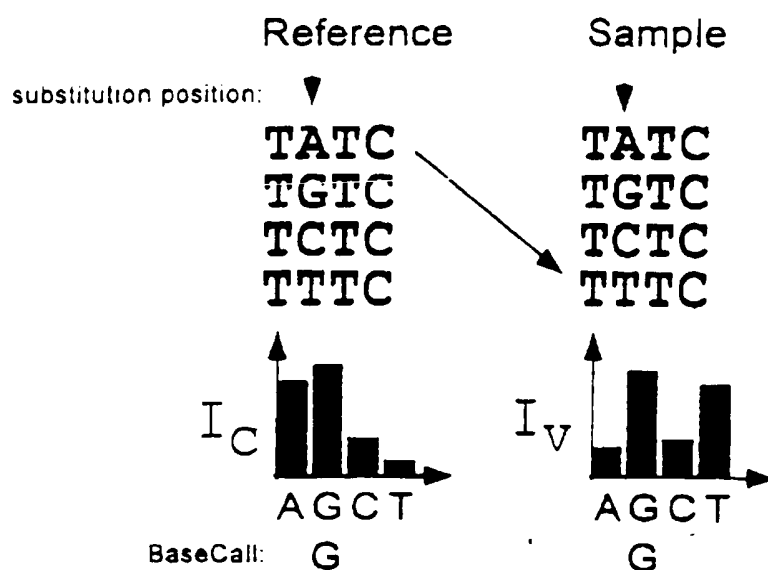


Normalized Difference:



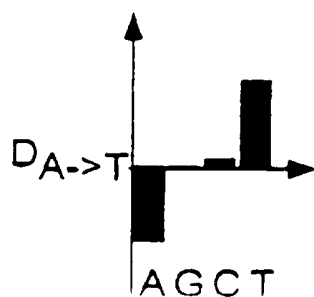
41/92

Fig 31 Induced Difference Nearest Neighbor Probe Scoring:



$$\text{Induced Difference: } D_A = (I_{V,A} - I_{C,A}) / I_{C,A}$$

- Average induced differences over all tilings and over both forward and reverse strands.

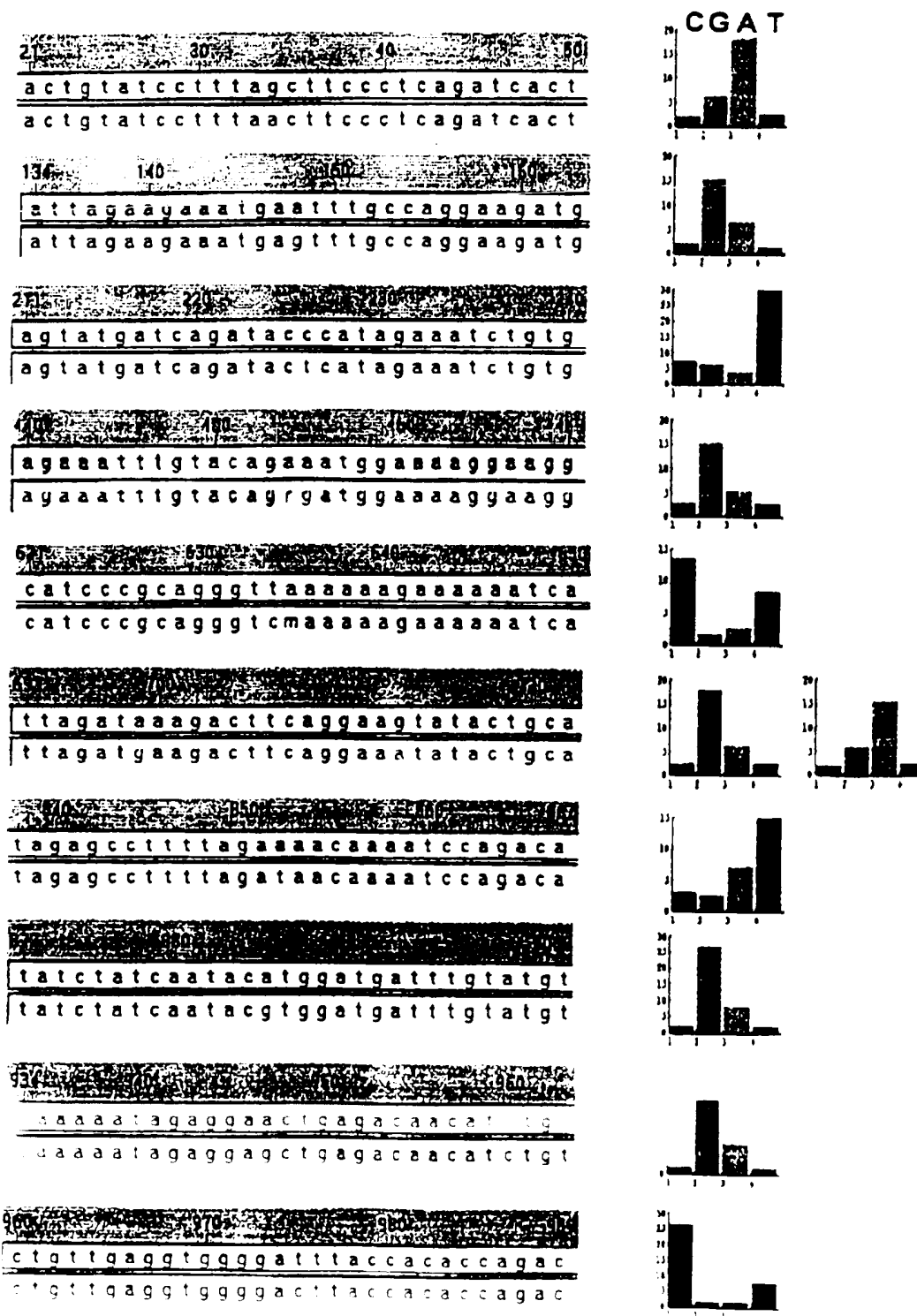


- Probe with A - "down-regulated"
- Probe with T - "up-regulated"
- A ---> T mutation

- Total Induced Difference > + Threshold : Mutation Exists
- Total Induced Difference < - Threshold : Mutation Exists
- Two criteria for mutations: Induced Difference Scores
- Bubble Formation

42/42

Fig. 32 Mutations found in an HIV PCR target (B) using a Generic Ligation GeneChip and Induced Difference Analysis



INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.

PCT/US97/01603

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER

IPC(6) : C12Q 1/00, 1/68; C07H 21/00

US CL : 435/4, 6; 536/22.1

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)

U.S. : 435/4, 6; 536/22.1

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practicable, search terms used)

APS, STN

search terms: nucleic acid, hybridization, array, ligase

C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category*	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X ---- Y	LIPSHUTZ et al. Using Oligonucleotide Probe Arrays To Access Genetic Diversity. Biotechniques. September 1995, Vol. 19, No. 3, pages 442-447, see entire document.	24-26, 28-32, 48 ----- 1-23, 27, 37-41
X ---- Y	SOUTHERN et al. Analyzing and Comparing Nucleic Acid Sequences by Hybridization to Arrays of Oligonucleotides: Evaluating Using Experimental Models. Genomics. 1992, Vol. 13, pages 1008-1017, see entire document.	24-26, 28-32, 48 ----- 1-23, 27, 37-41
Y	EP 0 320 308 A2 (BIOTECHNICA INTERNATIONAL, INC.) 14 June 1989, columns 1-2.	1-23, 27, 37-41
Y	EP 0 336 731 A2 (CITY OF HOPE) 11 October 1989, see abstract.	1-23, 27, 37-41

☐ Further documents are listed in the continuation of Box C.☐ See patent family annex.

* Special categories of cited documents:	* T	later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention
* A		document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance
* E		earlier document published on or after the international filing date
* L		document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or the special reasons as specified
	* X	document of particular relevance, the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone
		document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed
		document member of the same patent family

Date of the actual completion of the international search

01 MAY 1997

Date of mailing of the international search report

14 MAY 1997

Name and mailing address of the ISA/US
Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks
Box PCT
Washington, D.C. 20231

Facsimile No. (703) 305-3230

Authorized officer

JEZIA RILEY

Telephone No. (703) 308-0196

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.

PCT/US97/01603

BOX II. OBSERVATIONS WHERE UNITY OF INVENTION WAS LACKING.

This ISA found multiple inventions as follows:

This application contains the following inventions or groups of inventions which are not so linked as to form a single inventive concept under PCT Rule 13.1.

Group I. Claims 1-32, 37-41, and 48, drawn to a method of hybridization, method of making a nucleic acid array and a kit.

Group II. Claims 33-36, drawn to a method of monitoring gene expression.

Group III. Claims 42-45, drawn to a method of labeling a nucleic acid.

Group IV. Claims 46 and 47, drawn to a compound.

and it considers that the International Application does not comply with the requirements of unity of invention (Rules 13.1, 13.2 and 13.3) for the reasons indicated below:

The inventions listed as Groups I-IV do not relate to a single inventive concept under PCT Rule 13.1 because, under PCT Rule 13.2, they lack the same or corresponding special technical features for the following reasons:

Inventions I comprises the special technical feature (a nucleic acid array), the method of making the special technical feature, and the first method of using the said special technical feature. Inventions II-III are different methods of use the special technical feature, and invention IV is a compound which does not mentioned the special technical feature of Invention I.